Chapter 3

State(s): Montana, Idaho, and Washington

Recovery Unit Name: Clark Fork River

(Including Lake Pend Oreille, Priest Lake, and Flathead Lake and their respective watersheds)

Region 1
U S Fish and Wildlife Service
Portland, Oregon

DISCLAIMER PAGE

Recovery plans delineate reasonable actions that are believed necessary to recover and protect listed species. Plans are prepared by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, sometimes with the assistance of recovery teams, contractors, State agencies, Tribal agencies, and others. Objectives will be attained and any necessary funds made available subject to budgetary and other constraints affecting the parties involved, as well as the need to address other priorities. Recovery plans do not necessarily represent the views or official positions or indicate the approval of any individuals or agencies involved in plan formulation, other than the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Recovery plans represent the official position of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service *only* after they have been signed by the Director or Regional Director as *approved*. Approved recovery plans are subject to modification as dictated by new findings, changes in species status, and the completion of recovery tasks.

Literature Citation: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2002. Chapter 3, Clark Fork River Recovery Unit, Montana, Idaho, and Washington. 285 p. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Bull Trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) Draft Recovery Plan. Portland, Oregon.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Many groups and individuals contributed to the development of this Clark Fork River Recovery Unit chapter, either by active participation in one or more of the Clark Fork Recovery Subunit Teams (referred to collectively as the Clark Fork Recovery Unit Teams) or through contributions to previous planning efforts. The following groups and their members contributed to previous planning efforts that, in large part, formed the basis for this chapter:

The Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group

Chris Clancy, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
Gary Decker, (formerly) Bitterroot National Forest
Les Evarts, Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes
Wade Fredenberg, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Chris Frissell, (formerly) University of Montana
Robb Leary, University of Montana
Brian Sanborn, U.S. Forest Service
Greg Watson, Plum Creek Timber Company
Tom Weaver, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks

The Panhandle Basin Bull Trout Technical Advisory Team

Chip Corsi, Idaho Fish and Game
Terry Cundy, Potlatch Corporation
Joe DuPont, (formerly) Idaho Department of Lands
Robert Hallock, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Sue Ireland, Kootenai Tribe of Idaho
David Mosier, Idaho Department of Environmental Quality
Ron Peters, Coeur d'Alene Tribe
Brett Roper, U.S. Forest Service
Brian Sugden, Plum Creek Timber Company

The Lake Pend Oreille Bull Trout Watershed Advisory Group

Bob Anderson, Avista Corporation
George Bacon, Idaho Department of Lands
Guy Bailey, American Wildlands
Doug Bradetich, Sandpoint Chamber of Commerce
Sandra Collins, General Public
Chip Corsi, Idaho Fish and Game
David Dillard, U.S. Forest Service
Joe DuPont, (formerly) Idaho Department of Lands
Robert Dunnagan, Trout Unlimited
Mark Eliot, Idaho Department of Lands
Jane Gorsuch, Intermountain Forest Industries Association
Robert Hallock, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Robert Harris, City of East Hope
Ken Heffner, Idaho Department of Lands
Sue Ireland, Kootenai Tribe of Idaho
Shawn Keough, Idaho State Senator – District 1
Ron Peters, Coeur d'Alene Tribe
Jeff Stewart, Natural Resources Conservation Service
William Towey, Kalispel Tribe
Mike Welling, Intermountain Forest Industries Association

Other Contributors

Ginger Thomas Gillin, Consultant
Shelley Spalding, (formerly) Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
Liter Spence, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks (Retired)

The following contributors participated in a Clark Fork Recovery Subunit Team or reviewed and commented on products of the teams:

Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit Team

Jim Brammer, U.S. Forest Service
Rob Brassfield, U.S. Forest Service
Vito Ciliberti, Bureau of Land Management
Chris Clancy, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
Gary Decker, (Formerly) U.S. Forest Service
Steve Gerdes, U.S. Forest Service
Wayne Hadley, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
Don Hair, U.S. Forest Service
Bob Hammer, U.S. Forest Service
Shane Hendrickson, U.S. Forest Service
Dale Hoth, U.S. Forest Service
Gary Ingman, Montana Department of Health and Human Services
Mike Jakober, U.S. Forest Service
Ladd Knotek, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
Dick Kramer, U.S. Forest Service
Brent Mabbott, PPL Montana (formerly Montana Power Company)
Sam Milodragovich, PPL Montana (formerly Montana Power Company)
Greg Neudecker, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Don Peters, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks (Retired)
Ron Pierce, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
Eric Reiland, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
Cecil Rich, (Formerly) Montana State University
Brian Riggers, U.S. Forest Service
Skip Rosquist, U.S. Forest Service
Bo Stuart, U.S. Forest Service
Jim Stutzman, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Brian Sugden, Plum Creek Timber Company
Tim Sullivan, U.S. Forest Service
Rich Torquemada, U.S. Forest Service
Len Walch, U.S. Forest Service

Kate Walker, (Formerly) U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Ruth Watkins, Tri-State Water Quality Council
Greg Watson, Plum Creek Timber Company

Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit Team

Dee Ann Bailey ,Coeur d'Alene Tribe
Rod Berg, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
John Carlson, U.S. Forest Service
John Chatel, U.S. Forest Service
Chip Corsi, Idaho Fish and Game
Joe DosSantos, Avista Corporation
Joe DuPont, (formerly) Idaho Department of Lands
Les Evarts, Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes
Doug Grupenhoff, U.S. Forest Service
Don Hair, U.S. Forest Service
Dave Haire, Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes
Robert Hallock, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Barry Hansen, Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes
Melinda Harm, Land and Water Fund
Steve Hemstrom, Avista Corporation
Shane Hendrickson, U.S. Forest Service
Joe Huston, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks (Retired)
Gary Ingman, Montana Department of Environmental Quality
Laura Katzman, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
Dick Kramer, U.S. Forest Service
Brent Mabbott, PPL Montana (formerly Montana Power Company)
Joe Maroney, Kalispel Tribes
Mary Mitchell, Rock Creek Alliance
David Mosier, Idaho Department of Environmental Quality
Ron Peters, Coeur d'Alene Tribe
Karen Pratt, Consultant
Brian Riggers, U.S. Forest Service
Pat Saffel, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
Liz Sedler, Alliance For the Wild Rockies
Timothy Swant, Avista Corporation

Tim Vore, Avista Corporation
Kate Walker, (formerly) U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Ruth Watkins, Tri-State Water Quality Council
Greg Watson, Plum Creek Timber Company

Flathead Recovery Subunit Team

Colden Baxter, (formerly) University of Montana
Mark Deleray, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
Les Evarts, Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes
Beth Gardner, U.S. Forest Service
Grant Grisak, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
Leo Marnell, Glacier National Park
Dan Hall, Montana Department of Natural Resources and Conservation
Arlene Montgomery, Friends of the Wild Swan
Dan Paschke, Trout Unlimited
Scott Rumsey, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
Brian Sugden, Plum Creek Timber Company
Pat Van Eimeren, U.S. Forest Service
Jim Vashro, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
Kate Walker, (formerly) U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Tom Weaver, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
Bill Westover, British Columbia Ministry of Water, Land, and Air Protection
Steve Phillips, U.S. Forest Service

Priest Recovery Subunit Team

Guy Bailey, Selkirk-Priest Basin Association
Chip Corsi, Idaho Fish and Game
Shandra Dekome, U.S. Forest Service
Joe DuPont, (formerly) Idaho Department of Lands
Jim Fredericks, Idaho Fish and Game
Robert Hallock, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Melinda Harm, Land and Water Fund
Joe Maroney, Kalispel Tribe
David Mosier, Idaho Department of Environmental Quality

Ned Horner, Idaho Fish and Game
DeeAnn Bailey, Coeur d'Alene Tribe
Brett Roper, U.S. Forest Service
Brian Sugden, Plum Creek Timber Company
Glen Rothrock, Idaho Department of Environmental Quality

CLARK FORK RIVER RECOVERY UNIT CHAPTER OF THE BULL TROUT RECOVERY PLAN

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

CURRENT SPECIES STATUS

The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service issued a final rule listing the Columbia River and Klamath River populations of bull trout as threatened species on June 10, 1998 (63 FR 31647). The Clark Fork River Recovery Unit (often referred to in this chapter as the Clark Fork Recovery Unit) forms part of the range of the Columbia River population segment. The Clark Fork Recovery Unit is the largest and one of the most diverse recovery units in the species' range, encompassing four recovery subunits (Upper Clark Fork, Lower Clark Fork, Flathead, and Priest) and including 38 existing core areas and about 150 currently identified local populations. Within the Clark Fork Recovery Unit, the historical distribution of bull trout is relatively intact, with some notable exceptions in the headwaters, but abundance has been reduced and some remaining populations are highly fragmented.

HABITAT REQUIREMENTS AND LIMITING FACTORS

Dams have been one of the most important factors in reducing the bull trout population of the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. Large hydroelectric dams permanently interrupted established bull trout migration routes, eliminating access from portions of the tributary system to the productive waters of Lake Pend Oreille and Flathead Lake. Additionally, these dams impacted the habitat that was left behind, affecting reservoir and lake levels, water temperature, and water quality. Smaller irrigation storage dams further fragmented some of the watersheds and made migration for bull trout increasingly difficult. At a few locations, however, benefits have resulted from some dams forming isolation barriers that have prevented the movement of nonnative fish.

The risk of core area and local population extirpation from isolation and fragmentation of habitat in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit is generally increasing, especially where populations of bull trout are in decline. Major dams were the catalyst for much of this disruption, and fragmentation has continued at a finer scale, caused by habitat decline and introductions of nonnative species. While bull trout are present in most historical core areas, substantial evidence indicates that local populations have been extirpated in major portions of this recovery unit, and many populations are at low enough levels to seriously reduce the chances of recolonization. The threat from isolation and fragmentation is real, and as more data are gathered, scientists will gain a better understanding of how bull trout migrate and interact between patches.

Of particular concern is the expansion of congeneric lake trout and brook trout populations in portions of the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. Scientists currently have limited tools available to deal with these intruders, and in many cases there is strong public opposition to controlling or eliminating other salmonids that provide sport fisheries. Though an improving trend is being realized in the quality of stream habitat for bull trout in many watersheds, introductions of nonnative species, particularly in large lakes, has reduced the carrying capacity for bull trout. A key to successful bull trout restoration is the education of both anglers and the nonangling public about the values of native species. Intact native fish ecosystems are increasingly rare, and we must allocate substantial resources to protecting and restoring those that remain.

For over 100 years, forestry practices have caused major impacts to bull trout habitat throughout the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. Because forestry is the primary landscape activity in the basin, the impacts have been widespread. The negative primary effects of past timber harvest, such as road construction, log skidding, riparian tree harvest, clear-cutting, and splash dams, have been reduced by the more progressive practices that have since been developed. But the legacy of the past century has resulted in lasting impacts to bull trout habitat, including increased sediment in streams, increased peak flows, hydrograph and thermal modifications, loss of instream woody debris, channel instability, and increased access by anglers and poachers. These impacts will continue, and they are irreversible in some drainages.

Livestock grazing has had the greatest impact to bull trout in the upper portion of the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. It is of particular concern where allotments are located along spawning and rearing streams. However, though severe site-specific problems may occur, livestock impacts are generally being reduced through better management practices on public and, to a lesser extent, private lands.

Agricultural impacts to bull trout in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit are primarily a result of water demand. Diversions for irrigation can destabilize stream channels, severely interrupt migratory corridors (blockages and dewatering) and, in some cases, entrain fish that are then lost to the ditches. A second, and potentially more serious issue, is the increased water temperature regime common to streams that are heavily diverted and/or subject to receiving irrigation return flows. All of these problems occur and are widespread in much of the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. Some of the worst impacts are in the upper drainages, and these problems are then transmitted to the receiving waters downstream. Overall, agricultural practices continue to represent a significant threat to bull trout recovery in this recovery unit.

Transportation systems are also a major contributor to the decline of bull trout in this recovery unit. Separating the direct effect of the roads and railroads from the human development associated with their construction is difficult. Construction methods during the late 19th and early 20th century, primarily channelization and meander cutoffs, caused major impacts to many of these streams, impacts that are still being manifested. Such impacts seldom occur with new roads. However, significant problems remain that are associated with passage barriers, sediment production, unstable slopes, improper maintenance, and high road densities, all of which impact bull trout. These problems can be addressed only on a site-by-site basis.

The legacy of mining, particularly in the upper portions of the Clark Fork River drainage, will continue to impact bull trout for many centuries to come. Extreme water quality degradation dates back to the 19th century, and purposeful improvement and continued vigilance will be required for many decades before the full potential of the aquatic resources can be restored. Some other portions of the Clark Fork River watershed (*e.g.*, the Flathead and Priest Recovery Subunits)

have not been materially impacted by mining. Meanwhile, existing mines and new mine proposals continue to develop and have the potential to negatively impact some core areas and local bull trout populations.

Ultimately, unmanaged growth and residential sprawl may be one of the biggest threats to the recovery of bull trout in this recovery unit. The entire Clark Fork Recovery Unit holds many of the attributes that increasingly attract people seeking relief from the urban environment. Human population growth in western Montana and northern Idaho has accelerated. The way in which this growth is managed, and our ability to limit the impacts of growth, in particular on bull trout spawning and rearing streams, is pivotal to the success of the bull trout recovery effort.

Increasing human populations have a direct impact on all of the other categories of risk that affect bull trout. Both legal and illegal angling (*i.e.*, poaching) have direct impacts on bull trout populations, despite the implementation of restrictive fishing regulations and strong educational efforts. The problem of illegal take of bull trout is intensified in stream corridors where roads provide access to highly visible (and therefore vulnerable) spawning stocks.

RECOVERY OBJECTIVES

The goal of the bull trout recovery plan is to **ensure the long-term persistence of self-sustaining, complex, interacting groups of bull trout distributed throughout the species' native range so that the species can be delisted.** Specifically, the recovery subunit teams for the four Clark Fork subunits (Upper Clark Fork, Lower Clark Fork, Flathead, and Priest) adopted the goal of **a sustained net increase in bull trout abundance and increased distribution of some local populations within existing core areas in this recovery unit (as measured by standards accepted by the recovery subunit teams, often referred to collectively as the Clark Fork Recovery Unit Teams).**

RECOVERY CRITERIA

To assess progress toward recovery objectives, the Clark Fork Recovery Unit Teams adopted recovery criteria. The recovery unit teams assumed that no

core area is viable with a population of fewer than 100 adults (see explanation within Recovery Criteria section of this chapter) because of the inherent stochastic and genetic risks associated with populations lower than that amount. The recovery criteria are applied on a core area-by-core area basis. In this recovery unit, a distinction has been made between two types of core areas—primary and secondary core areas—based mostly on the size, connectedness, and complexity of the associated watershed and the degree of natural population isolation.

The following have been designated as primary core areas under recovered conditions in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit: the upper Clark Fork River, Rock Creek, Blackfoot River, Bitterroot River, lower Clark Fork River, Lake Pend Oreille, Priest Lakes and Priest River, Flathead Lake, Swan Lake, and Hungry Horse Reservoir.

The following have been designated as secondary core areas, for the purposes of recovery, in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit: the Clearwater River and associated chain of lakes, West Fork Bitterroot River upstream of Painted Rocks Dam, and 22 lakes in the Flathead Recovery Subunit.

1. **Distribution criteria will be met when the total number of identified local populations (currently numbering about 150) has been maintained or increased and when local populations remain broadly distributed in all existing core areas**.

2. **Abundance criteria will be met when, in all 10 primary core areas, each of at least 5 local populations contains more than 100 adult bull trout. In the Lake Pend Oreille core area, each of at least 6 local populations must contain more than 100 adult bull trout. In the Flathead Lake core area, each of at least 10 local populations must contain more than 100 adult bull trout. In each of the 10 primary core areas, the total adult bull trout abundance, distributed among local populations, must exceed 1,000 fish, and adult bull trout abundance must exceed 2,500 adult bull trout in each of the following lakes: Lake Pend Oreille, Flathead Lake, and Swan Lake.**

The abundance criteria for 24 secondary core areas will be met when each core area with the habitat capacity to do so supports at least one local population containing more than 100 adult bull trout and when total adult abundance in the secondary core areas collectively exceeds 2,400 fish.

3. **Trend criteria will be met when the overall bull trout population in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit is accepted, under contemporary standards of the time, as stable or increasing, based on at least 10 years of monitoring data**.

4. **Connectivity criteria will be met when functional fish passage is restored or determined to be unnecessary to support bull trout recovery at Milltown, Thompson Falls, Noxon Rapids, Cabinet Gorge, and Priest Lake Dams and when dam operational issues are satisfactorily addressed at Hungry Horse, Bigfork, Kerr, and Albeni Falls Dams (as identified through Federal Energy Regulatory Commission license conditions and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Opinions).** Restoring connectivity to the extent that the abundance and distribution requirements above are met will probably require that additional passage barriers, identified as inhibiting bull trout migration on smaller streams within the Clark Fork Recovery Unit, be remedied. Restored connectivity of the mainstem of the Clark Fork River will consolidate six existing core areas, which are a result of fragmentation caused by the dams, into two (recovered) core areas in the upper and lower Clark Fork River.

ACTIONS NEEDED

Recovery for bull trout will entail reducing threats to the long-term persistence of populations and their habitats, ensuring the security of multiple interacting groups of bull trout, and providing habitat conditions and access to them that allow for the expression of various life-history forms. The seven categories of actions needed are discussed in Chapter 1; tasks specific to this recovery unit are provided in this chapter.

ESTIMATED COST OF RECOVERY

Total cost of bull trout recovery in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit is estimated at $71.9 million spread over a 25-year recovery period. Total cost includes estimates of expenditures by local, Tribal, State, and Federal governments and by private businesses and individuals. These costs are attributed to bull trout conservation, but other aquatic species will also benefit. Cost estimates are not provided for tasks which are normal agency responsibilities under existing authorities.

ESTIMATED DATE OF RECOVERY

Expected times necessary to achieve recovery will vary among recovery units because of differences in bull trout status, factors affecting bull trout, implementation and effectiveness of recovery tasks, and responses to recovery tasks. In the Clark Fork Recovery Unit, the current status of bull trout is better than in many other portions of the range, but a tremendous amount of work remains to be done to reconnect and restore impaired habitat and to cope with threats from nonnative species. It may be 3 to 5 bull trout generations (15 to 25 years), or possibly longer, before significant reductions can be made in the identified threats to the species and bull trout can be considered eligible for delisting.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

DISCLAIMER PAGE ii

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS iii

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY ix

TABLE OF CONTENTS xvi

LIST OF TABLES xviii

LIST OF FIGURES xviii

INTRODUCTION 1
- Recovery Unit Designation 1
- Geographic Description 8

DISTRIBUTION AND ABUNDANCE 23
- Status of Bull Trout at the Time of Listing 23
- Current Distribution and Abundance 24

REASONS FOR BULL TROUT DECLINE 29
- Water Quality 29
- Dams 30
- Forestry Management Practices 41
- Livestock Grazing 51
- Agricultural Practices 54
- Transportation Networks 62
- Mining 69
- Residential Development 75
- Fisheries Management 80
- Isolation and Habitat Fragmentation 108

CONSERVATION MEASURES 116
State of Idaho 116
State of Montana 118
Federal Activities 120
Native American Tribal Activities 122
Canadian Government Activities 122

STRATEGY FOR RECOVERY 123
Recovery Goals and Objectives 129
Recovery Criteria 135

ACTIONS NEEDED 141
Recovery Measures Narrative 141

IMPLEMENTATION SCHEDULE 210

REFERENCES CITED 263

APPENDIX A. Common and Scientific Names of Fishes Found in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. 283

APPENDIX B. List of Chapters. 285

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1. Summary of redd count information for Clark Fork Recovery Unit core areas during the period 1996–2000 27

Table 2. List of local populations by core area in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit 124

Table 3. Numeric standards necessary to achieve recovered abundance of bull trout in primary and secondary core areas of the Clark Fork Recovery Unit of the Columbia River drainage. 131

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1. Bull trout recovery units in the United States. The Clark Fork Recovery Unit is highlighted. 1

Figure 2. Map of the Clark Fork Recovery Unit showing relationship of recovery subunits and major watersheds 2

Figure 3. Map of core areas in the Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit . . . 3

Figure 4. Map of core areas in the Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit . . . 4

Figure 5. Map of core areas in the north half of the Flathead Recovery Subunit 5

Figure 6. Map of core areas in the south half of the Flathead Recovery Subunit 6

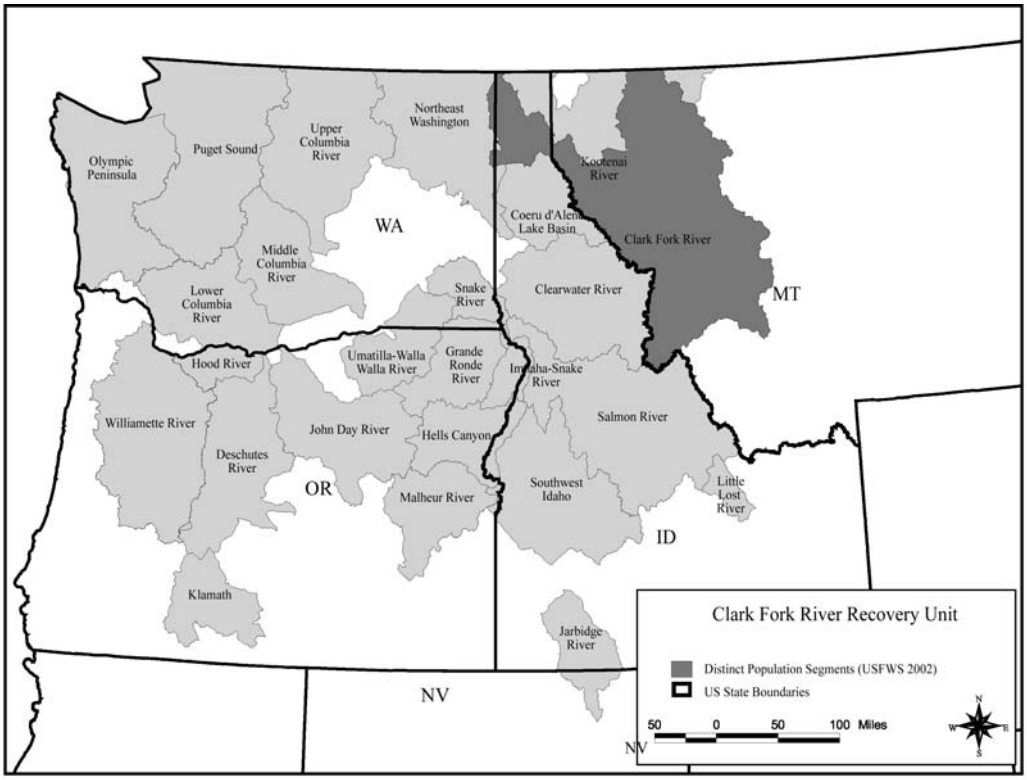
Figure 7. Map of core areas in the Priest Recovery Subunit 7

INTRODUCTION

Recovery Unit Designation

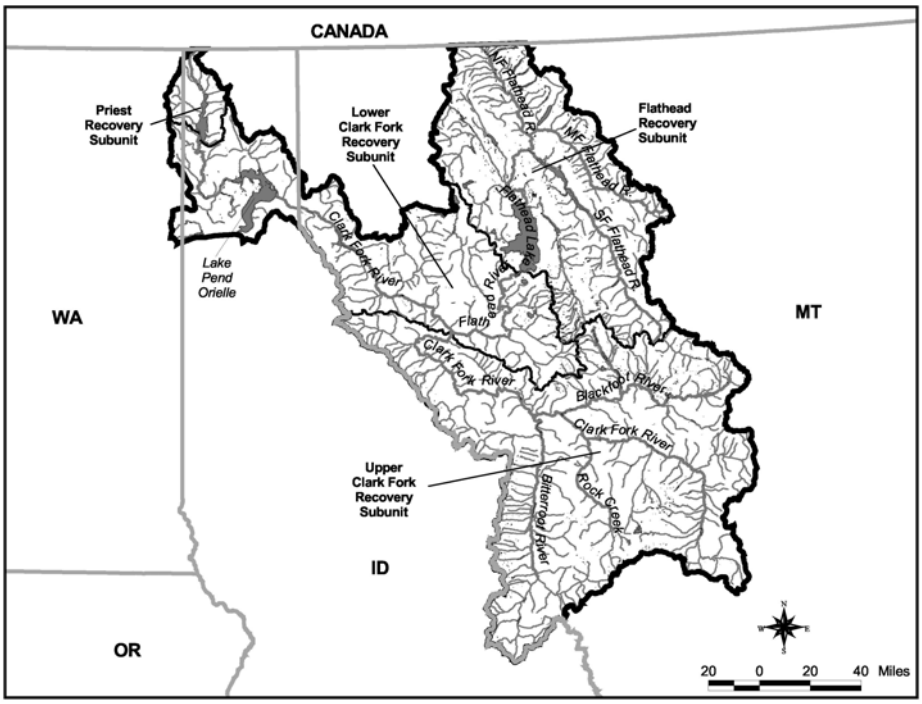
The Clark Fork River Recovery Unit is one of 22 recovery units designated for bull trout in the Columbia River basin (Figure 1). It is the largest recovery unit in the range of bull trout. Historically, the Clark Fork Recovery Unit contained one or more interconnected bull trout populations upstream of Albeni Falls, with migration of adult bull trout possible from Lake Pend Oreille, Priest Lake, and Flathead Lake upstream to most of the rest of the basin. It has been argued by the State of Montana that under the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service distinct population segment policy, the Clark Fork River bull trout population(s) satisfy the criteria as a separate distinct population segment (Racicot, *in litt.*, 1998*)*. Recent genetic information lends some support to this premise (Spruell *et al.* 2002), but formal action to analyze and reevaluate the designated population segment has not been initiated.

Figure 1. Bull trout recovery units in the United States. The Clark Fork Recovery Unit is highlighted



There is some uncertainty in the historical literature about which, if any, of the falls in the lower Pend Oreille River were absolute barriers to fish migration. Gilbert and Evermann (1895) concluded that Albeni Falls, near the outlet of Lake Pend Oreille, was not likely to provide a passage barrier to upstream migrating fishes. They indicated that Metaline Falls farther downstream might also be passable, though salmon are not known to have passed above that point. There is no information on whether bull trout passed these barriers. The Northeast Washington Recovery Unit Team is developing a separate recovery plan chapter for that portion of the Pend Oreille River between Albeni Falls Dam and Metaline Falls (see Chapter 23). The Clark Fork Recovery Subunit Teams recommend that a reevaluation of the distinct population segment designations for the Columbia River be considered based on genetic information and physical isolation. For recovery planning purposes, and because of the size of the basin and the complexity and diversity of issues associated with recovery planning at this scale, the lower boundary of the Clark Fork Recovery Unit has been set at Albeni Falls Dam and the upstream waters have been divided into four subunits (Figure 2).

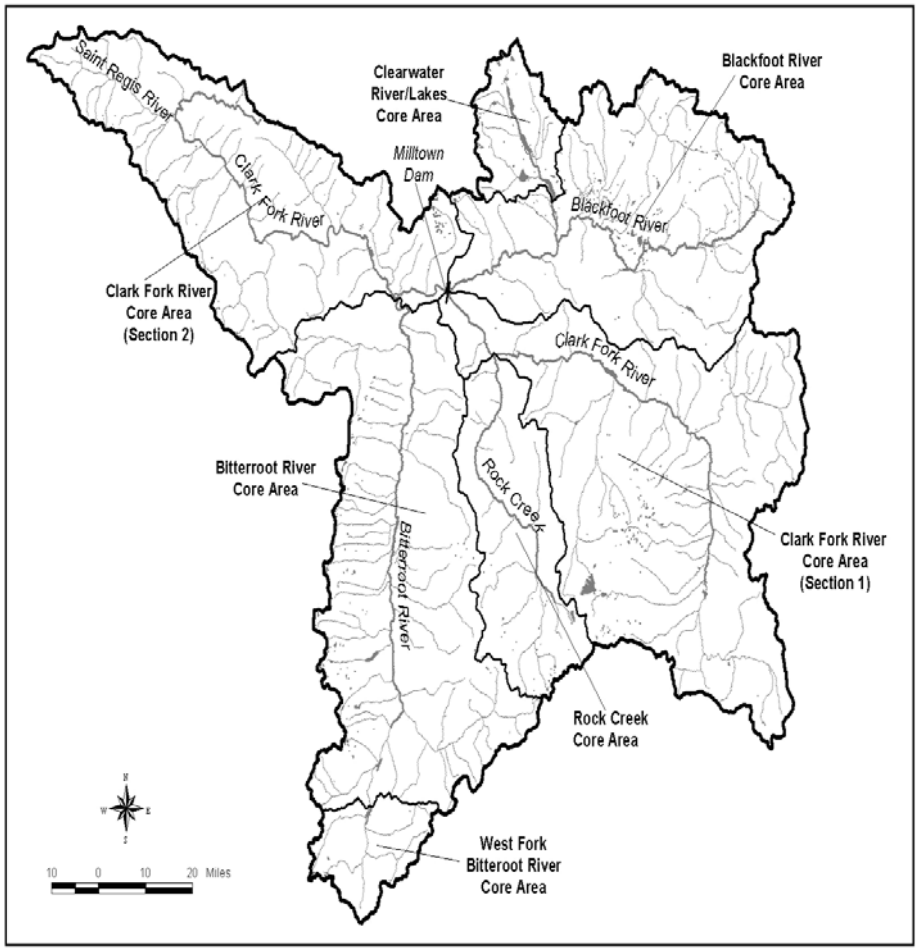
Figure 2. Map of the Clark Fork Recovery Unit showing relationship of recovery subunits and major watersheds.



These divisions are based, in part, on the presence of existing manmade barriers, and they are made to more effectively manage the size and complexity of the basin and to allow the recovery plan to focus upon areas (subunits) with common issues.

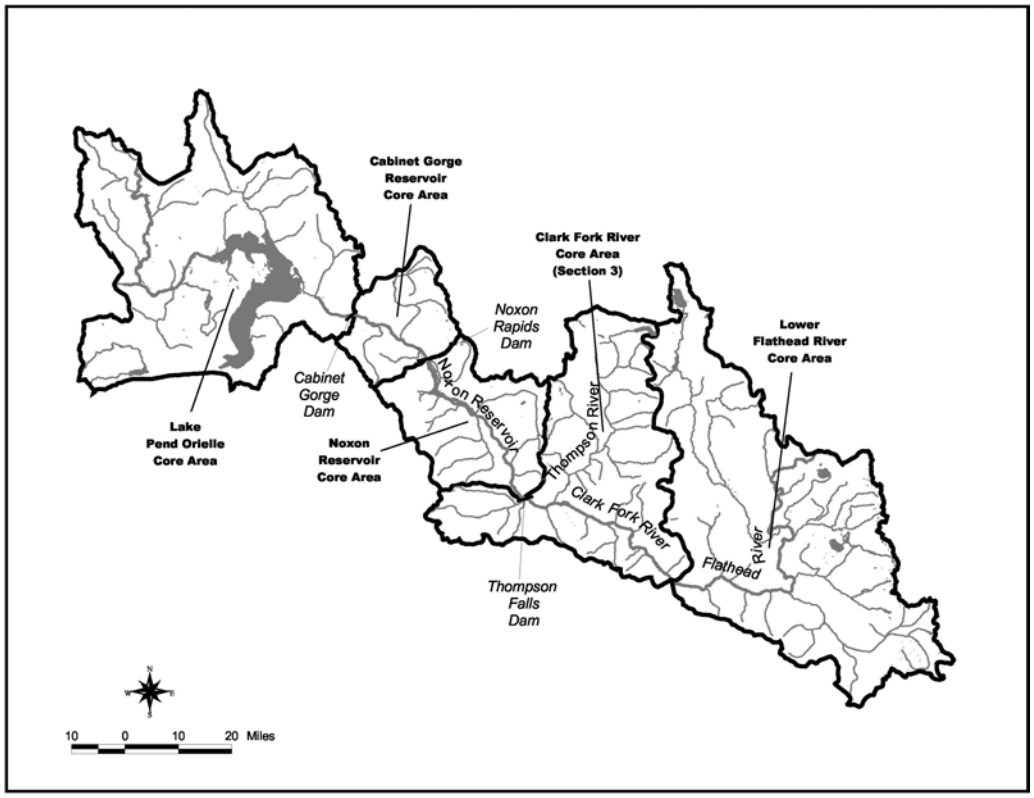
The **Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit** (Figure 3) includes the entire Clark Fork River basin in Montana upstream of the junction of the Flathead River. Major watersheds include, in addition to the Clark Fork River itself, the Blackfoot River, Bitterroot River, Rock Creek, and the St. Regis River. This recovery subunit has a drainage area of about 28,500 square kilometers (11,000 square miles) and covers much of the central portion of the Rocky Mountain slopes of western Montana.

Figure 3. Map of core areas in the Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit



The **Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit** (Figure 4) includes Lake Pend Oreille and its Idaho tributaries and the Clark Fork River and its tributaries in Montana upstream to the confluence with the Flathead River. Major basins include Lake Pend Oreille and direct tributaries in Idaho (the Clark Fork River; Gold, North Gold, Granite, Johnson, Lightning, and Trestle Creeks; and the Pack River watershed); the lower Priest River and tributaries in the East River system; the Bull River, Vermillion River, Prospect Creek, Thompson River, and the mainstem Clark Fork River in Montana. This recovery subunit also includes the Flathead River drainage upstream to Kerr Dam on the outlet of Flathead Lake, incorporating most of the Flathead Indian Reservation and including the Jocko River and Mission Creek watersheds. This recovery subunit has a drainage area of over 15,500 square kilometers (6,000 square miles) in Montana and Idaho.

Figure 4. Map of core areas in the Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit



The **Flathead Recovery Subunit** (Figures 5 and 6) includes Flathead Lake and its tributary system (North and Middle Fork Flathead, Stillwater, and Whitefish Rivers), Swan Lake and its tributaries, and the South Fork Flathead River watershed upstream of Hungry Horse Dam. About 27 natural lakes with adfluvial bull trout populations occur in this recovery subunit. A portion of the North Fork Flathead River lies in British Columbia, Canada. The drainage area upstream of Kerr Dam is about 18,400 square kilometers (7,100 square miles, including 427 square miles in British Columbia).

Figure 5. Map of core areas in the north half of the Flathead Recovery Subunit

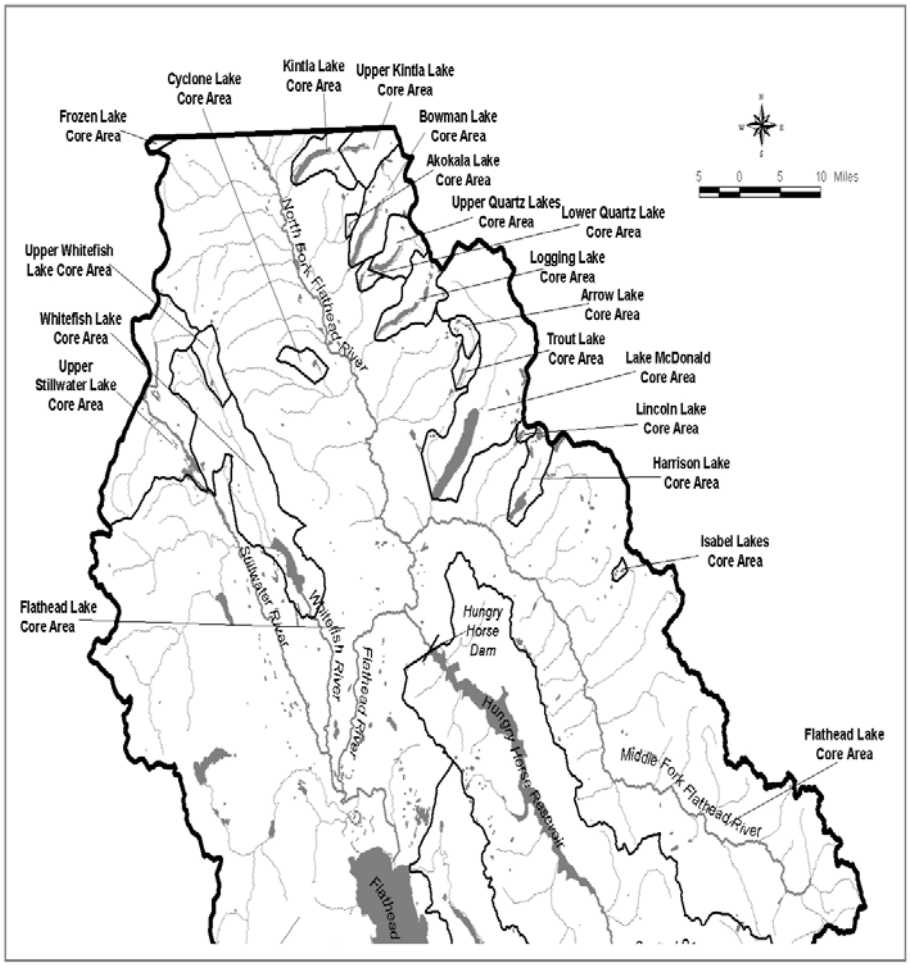
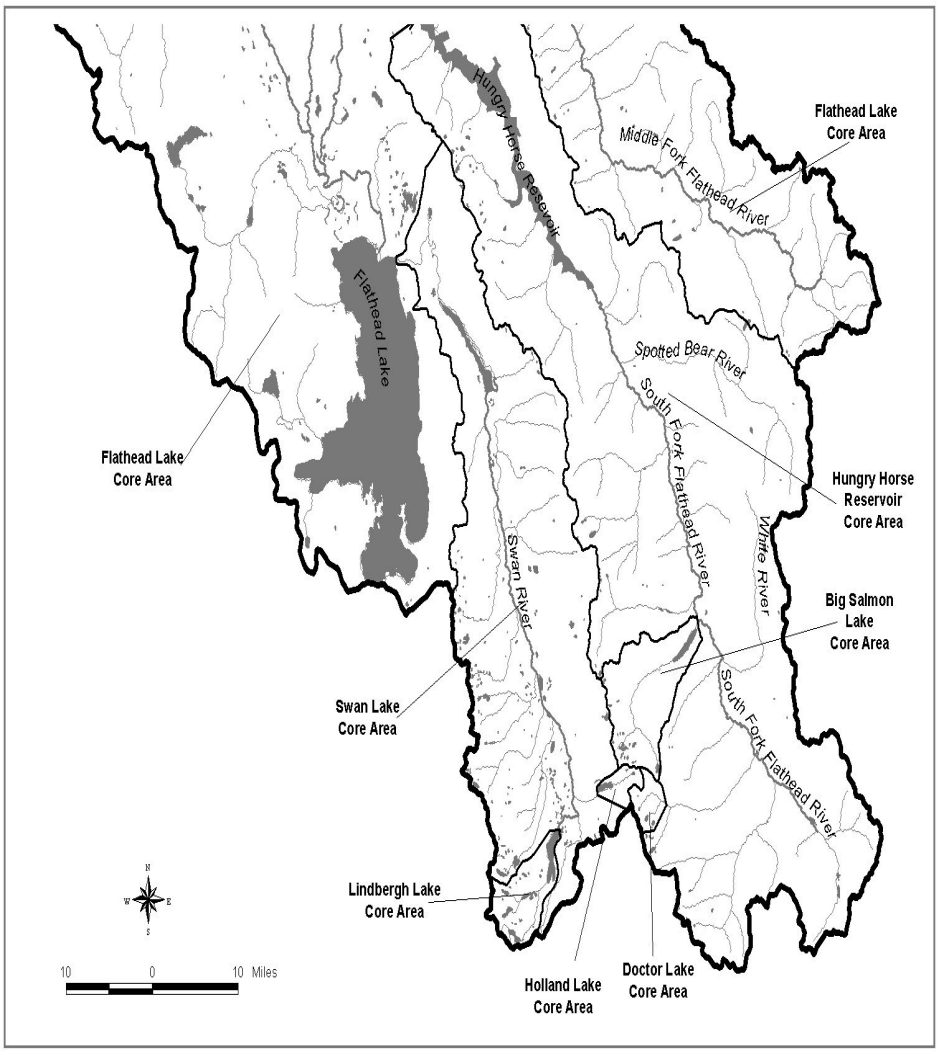
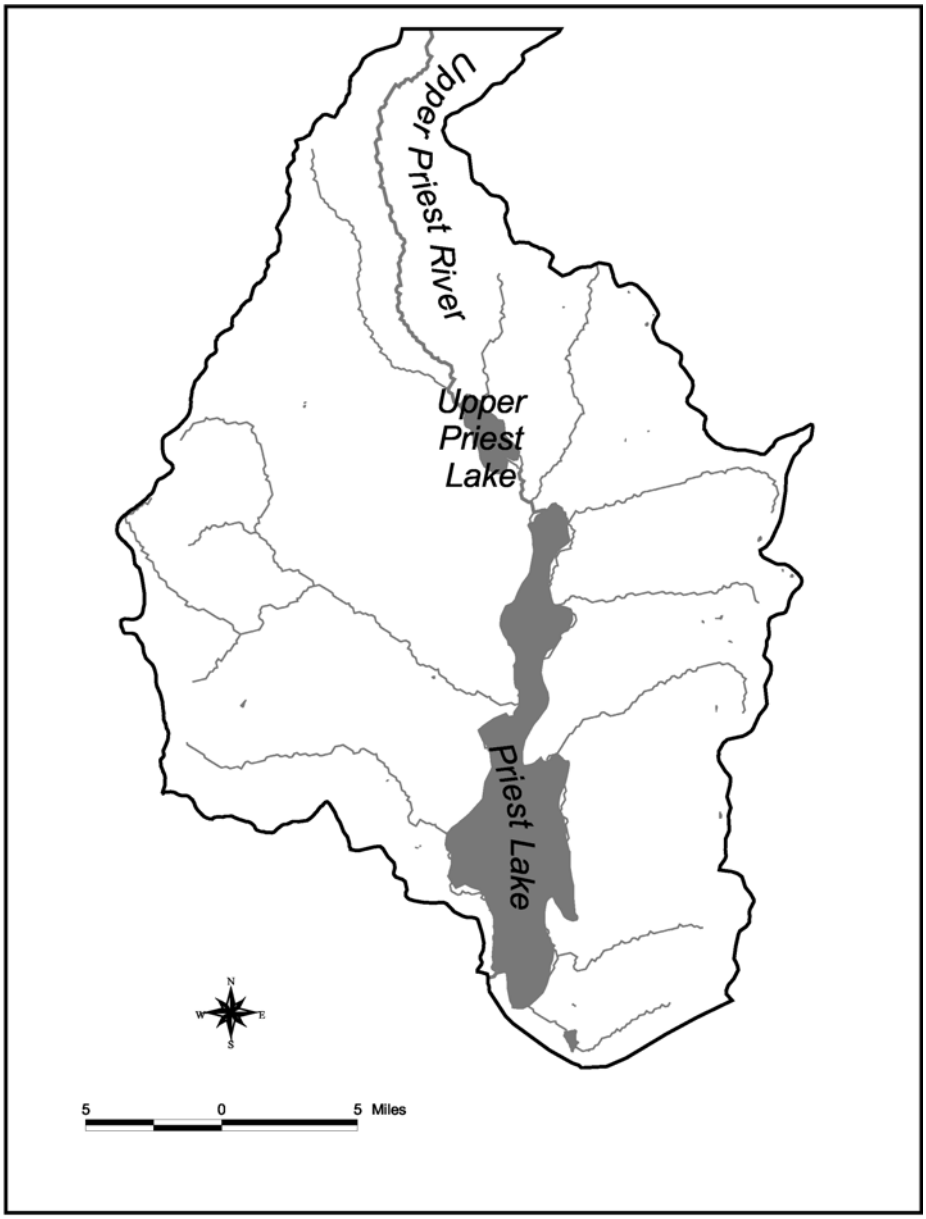


Figure 6. Map of core areas in the south half of the Flathead Recovery Subunit



The **Priest Recovery Subunit** (Figure 7) includes Priest Lake, its direct tributaries, and its tributary system upstream, including the Priest River Thorofare, Upper Priest Lake, and the Upper Priest River. The Priest River watershed is partially isolated from the Pend Oreille system by Priest Lake Dam. The entire Priest River has a drainage area of about 2,500 square kilometers (979 square miles) in Idaho and eastern Washington.

Figure 7. Map of core areas in the Priest Recovery Subunit



While there is no clear dividing line for bull trout recovery efforts between the upper and lower Clark Fork River basins, we have chosen to split the recovery unit at the confluence with the Flathead River. This location was chosen, in part, because reconnecting the migratory corridor of the lower Flathead and Jocko Rivers to Lake Pend Oreille is an important biological issue and critically important to the Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes. In a 200-kilometer (120-mile) reach of the Clark Fork River, extending from the mouth of the Flathead River upstream to Milltown Dam, bull trout are rare in the mainstem Clark Fork River. Radio telemetry studies of bull trout that congregate downstream of Milltown Dam have proven these fish are migrants and that they are attempting to return to the upper basin. Therefore, it was appropriate to group this reach of the Clark Fork River with watersheds in the Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit.

For similar reasons, the Flathead Recovery Subunit, upstream of Kerr Dam, is considered separate from the rest of the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. Thirty local populations in the Flathead River basin, identified in the status summary that was prepared for the listing rule (USFWS 1998), are all adfluvial stocks. There is little historical evidence of the presence of discrete fluvial or resident stocks in these waters, though recent radio telemetry work in the Flathead River indicates that individual fish may exhibit a primarily fluvial life history. Since 1938, the Flathead River basin has been physically isolated from the rest of the Clark Fork River basin by Kerr Dam, and due to natural thermal characteristics (warm outflow in the fall season), it's not likely that significant two-way genetic interchange with stocks from Lake Pend Oreille has occurred since the retreat of the last ice age about 10,000 years ago. The entire Flathead National Forest and portions of Glacier National Park are located within this subunit.

Geographic Description

The Clark Fork River originates at the confluence of Silver Bow and Warm Springs Creeks in the Deer Lodge Valley of Montana and flows primarily in a northwesterly direction (Figure 2) for about 564 river kilometers (350 miles) to its terminus at Lake Pend Oreille, Idaho (Watson 1985). The Clark Fork River is Montana's largest river in terms of stream discharge, with an average annual stream flow of 630 cubic meters per second (22,230 cubic feet per second) near Cabinet,

Idaho, a few kilometers upstream of the mouth at Lake Pend Oreille. The total drainage area upstream of that point is 57,169 square kilometers (22,073 square miles) (USGS 2001). Downstream of Lake Pend Oreille, the river is renamed the Pend Oreille River. The Pend Oreille River flows across the northeast corner of the State of Washington for about 200 kilometers (125 miles) before joining with the Columbia River in southern British Columbia.

Most of the higher-elevation forested lands within the Clark Fork River drainage are National Forest. Private lands are primarily located within the nonforested valley floors or interspersed as small parcels within Forest Service boundaries. Within portions of the Clark Fork River basin, land ownership (by 4th code hydrologic unit or HUC) is as much as 60 percent private (upper Clark Fork River), but ranges to as high as 98 percent National Forest land in other watersheds (South Fork Flathead River). Substantial private timberlands (primarily Plum Creek Timber Company) occur within the Swan, Flathead, Blackfoot, and portions of the upper Clark Fork River drainages. Much of the upper Flathead River basin is in wilderness or Glacier National Park. Most of the lower Flathead River drainage is on the Flathead Indian Reservation.

Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

The upper reach of the Clark Fork River (upstream of the junction of the Flathead River) is about 395 kilometers (246 miles) long and has an annual average streamflow of about 222 cubic meters per second (7,850 cubic feet per second) (USGS 2001). In an average year, most of the annual runoff occurs in May and June. The periods of greatest consumptive demand for water are July and August (MBTSG 1995e).

Rock Creek enters the Clark Fork River near Clinton at river mile 382 (measured upstream of the confluence of the Pend Oreille River and Columbia River) (MDNRC 1984). Rock Creek has a drainage area of 2,290 square kilometers (885 square miles) and an average annual flow of 15.3 cubic meters per second (541 cubic feet per second) (USGS 2001).

The Blackfoot River flows approximately 214 kilometers (133 miles) in a westerly direction through a mostly forested valley to its confluence with the Clark

Fork River near the town of Bonner, Montana, at river mile 364 (MDNRC 1984). The Blackfoot River has a drainage area of approximately 5,931 square kilometers (2,290 square miles). Average annual discharge near the mouth of the river is 45.2 cubic meters per second (1,597 cubic feet per second) (USGS 2001).

The Bitterroot River is formed at the junction of the East Fork and West Fork Bitterroot Rivers near the town of Conner, Montana, and from there, the mainstem flows north through the irrigated crop- and pastureland of the Bitterroot River valley approximately 137 kilometers (85 miles) to the Clark Fork River near Missoula at river mile 350 (MDNRC 1984). The Bitterroot River has 27 major tributaries on the west side and 12 on the east side, many of which today contain resident bull trout populations. It is speculated, though not documented, that many of these populations historically had a strong migratory component. The approximate mean annual flow of the Bitterroot River is 73.5 cubic meters per second (2,596 cubic feet per second) about 10 kilometers (6 miles) upstream of its confluence with the Clark Fork River (USGS 2001).

Topography and geology of the upper Clark Fork River basin and several of its tributaries were strongly influenced by glacial activity. Glaciers deposited extensive outwashes of gravel and morainal (masses of rock) drifts. These glacial deposits influence streamflows in some reaches of the main rivers and tributaries. Tributaries flowing through glacial deposits often have intermittent sections.

Resident bull trout are now the predominant life history form present in the upper Clark Fork River. Migratory fish are only found in significant numbers in the Rock Creek and Blackfoot watersheds. Fish that migrate out of Rock Creek or the Blackfoot River and pass downstream of Milltown Dam (river mile 364) cannot pass back upstream.

In general, the status of migratory bull trout in the Blackfoot River and Rock Creek drainages appears to be stable or increasing, though no statistically verified trend has yet been described. However, in some streams, numbers of bull trout have declined in recent years. No population data are available for other portions of the drainage such as the Clearwater Lakes system, mainstem Clark Fork River, St. Regis

River, or Fish Creek. However, anecdotal observations indicate an apparent widespread decline in abundance from historical levels in major portions of the basin.

The major life form of bull trout in the Bitterroot River drainage is resident fish that tend to live in higher-elevation streams within the Bitterroot National Forest. Migratory fish in the Bitterroot River are now rare (Nelson 1999), although historically they were more common. Overall, habitat in the drainage is fragmented by dewatering and diversions, and bull trout populations are characterized by local populations of small resident fish that have little or no genetic interchange.

Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

The Lower Flathead River flows south and west for 116 kilometers (72 miles), from Kerr Dam downstream to its confluence with the Clark Fork River (river mile 245); about 60 kilometers (37 miles) upstream of Thompson Falls Dam. The Flathead River has an annual average discharge of 337.6 cubic meters per second (11,920 cubic feet per second) near its confluence with the Clark Fork River (USGS 2001). Flow in this portion of the Flathead River is partially regulated by Kerr Dam, located 6.4 kilometers (4 miles) downstream of the original outlet of Flathead Lake.

The Flathead Indian Reservation is the 486,000-hectare (1.2-million acre) home of the Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes. The reservation was established by the Hellgate Treaty in 1855. The entire reservation lies within the Clark Fork River basin and includes the southern half of Flathead Lake and approximately 109 kilometers (68 miles) of the lower Flathead River, as well as its associated tributary streams. Important tributaries for bull trout are the Jocko River and Mission Creek.

Lake Pend Oreille is the largest and deepest natural lake in Idaho (Panhandle Bull Trout Technical Advisory Team 1998). It covered about 33,696 hectares (83,200 acres) under natural conditions, and it now (post-impoundment by Albeni Falls Dam) has a surface area of about 38,362 hectares (94,720 acres) (PBTTAT 1998a). The lake has more than 282 kilometers (175 miles) of shoreline, with mean and maximum depths of 164 meters (538 feet) and 351 meters (1,152 feet), respectively. Nearly all of the waters currently accessible to bull trout from Lake Pend Oreille lie within the

State of Idaho, including 15 kilometers (9 miles) of the Clark Fork River upstream to Cabinet Gorge Dam (PBTTAT 1998a).

About 95 percent of Lake Pend Oreille's volume is in the large, southernmost basin, a glacially influenced portion of the Purcell Trench (PBTTAT 1998a). Average hydraulic residence time in the southern basin is estimated to exceed 10 years (PBTTAT 1998a). The main body of Lake Pend Oreille never freezes.

Lake Pend Oreille is an oligotrophic (nutrient-poor) lake. Woods (1991) compared recent water quality data to historical data and reported that the pelagic (open-water) zone of Lake Pend Oreille showed no major temporal changes in nutrient concentrations, chlorophyll *a* concentrations, or Secchi disc water transparency depths since the early 1950's (PBTTAT 1998a). Nutrient concentrations in shoreline areas and in the northern basin of the lake are considerably higher because of urbanization and suspended sediments in Clark Fork River inflow.

Cabinet Gorge Dam, constructed in 1952, partially regulates flows in the Clark Fork River. The Settlement Agreement with the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission for licensing Cabinet Gorge Dam provides for a minimum flow of 141.6 cubic meters per second (5,000 cubic feet per second). River flows are augmented by groundwater inflow, which contributes at least an additional 22.7 cubic meters per second (800 cubic feet per second) below the dam (PBTTAT 1998a). Cabinet Gorge Dam is operated as a peaking facility, and during low flow periods, releases typically vary from 141.6 cubic meters per second (5,000 cubic feet per second) to about 566.4 cubic meters per second (20,000 cubic feet per second) or more on a daily basis. This range may vary depending on availability of water and demand for electricity.

The Clark Fork River watershed upstream of Lake Pend Oreille includes most of western Montana and covers some 59,324 square kilometers (22,905 square miles) (PBTTAT 1998a). Average annual river flow is approximately 629.6 cubic meters per second (22,230 cubic feet per second) (USGS 2001). The river contributes approximately 92 percent of the annual inflow to the lake (PBTTAT 1998a) and most of the suspended sediment load.

The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers operates Albeni Falls Dam on the Pend Oreille River; the dam is located in Idaho near the Washington border. The Clark Fork River is renamed the Pend Oreille River as it exits the lake. This dam, also constructed in 1952, impounds 44 kilometers (28 miles) of the Pend Oreille River and regulates the lake's elevation between 625 meters (2,051 feet) mean sea level (winter) and 629 meters (2,062.5 feet) mean sea level (summer).

The lower Priest River originates at the outlet of Priest Lake. The lower Priest River flows a distance of 72 kilometers (45 river miles) to its confluence with the Pend Oreille River at the City of Priest River. Major tributaries include the Upper West Branch and Lower West Branch Priest Rivers and the East River.

Bull trout have been documented in the East River system and the lower Priest River downstream of Priest Lake. Based on the sizes of fish observed, speculations have been made that the bull trout in the East River are probably migrants from Lake Pend Oreille. East River bull trout may represent a rather unique population, whose adults migrate downstream from the main body of the lake into the Pend Oreille River arm, then up the Priest River system. Until genetic or radiotelemetry studies can confirm this, the lower Priest River fish will be treated as a local population of the Lake Pend Oreille core area. Tributaries to the lower Priest River were probably important historically for foraging and thermal refuge by adult and subadult bull trout.

Land ownership in the basins that are direct tributaries to Lake Pend Oreille is typically 75 to 98 percent U.S. Forest Service, with most of the remaining land in private ownership (PBTTAT 1998a). The exception is the Pack River drainage, which is 55 percent U.S. Forest Service land, 36 percent private land, 7 percent State of Idaho land, and 2 percent Bureau of Land Management land.

The Trestle Creek watershed enters Lake Pend Oreille from the Cabinet Mountains at the northern end of the lake. Trestle Creek is a 5,959-hectare (14,713-acre), third-order watershed that includes several smaller tributaries. Trestle Creek contains some of the highest-quality bull trout habitat remaining in the Lake Pend Oreille/lower Clark Fork River tributary system.

Lightning Creek is approximately 35 kilometers (22 miles) long and drains into the Clark Fork River 4 kilometers (2.5 miles) upstream of Lake Pend Oreille (PBTTAT 1998a). The Lightning Creek channel is unstable, and aerial photos from the 1930's suggest that lower Lightning Creek has shifted from a primarily single channel stream to a highly braided stream with an increased width to depth ratio. A barrier falls is present on Lightning Creek near Quartz Creek. Bull trout spawn in the upper mainstem of Lightning Creek below Quartz Creek, as well as in most major tributaries.

Pack River comprises the second largest watershed draining into Lake Pend Oreille. The Pack River basin has more glacial fluvial deposits than any other basin in the watershed, and the underlying geology is largely granitic in origin. As a result, sand-sized sediment is the primary material that is eroded and transported in streams of this basin. The Pack River basin supports diverse land uses and contains lands under private, State, and Federal ownership. These uses, coupled with the Sundance fire in 1967, have negatively influenced habitat conditions for bull trout in Pack River (PBTTAT 1998a). Loss of riparian vegetation and associated root masses due to fire, salvage, timber harvesting, livestock grazing, or clearing reduces bank stability and results in delivery of fine sediment to the stream channel.

Grouse Creek is a fourth-order watershed with a drainage area comprising 77,857 hectares (31,352 acres). It is an important tributary to the Pack River watershed for bull trout. Grouse Creek flows from the western side of the Cabinet Mountains and drains west by southwest into the Pack River. A large portion of the Grouse Creek watershed lies within the “transient snow zone,” identified as lands within an elevation range that exhibits frequent rain-on-snow events, resulting in flooding. The transient snow zone in northern Idaho is estimated at 762 to 1,372 meters (2,500 to 4,500 feet) in elevation (PBTTAT 1998a).

Gold and North Gold Creeks are adjacent drainages entering the southeast end of Lake Pend Oreille in close proximity to each other. Gold Creek is currently the second most important bull trout spawning stream in the watershed (after Trestle Creek), with an average of about 102 redds per year in 1983 to 1998 (LPOWAG 1999). Excess bedload (largely a result of the mining legacy), sediment, and a lack of large woody debris are considered to be the greatest limiting factors for bull trout

habitat in the watershed. North Gold Creek has supported an average of about 30 redds per year and has been impacted by development of a homestead, which is now being reclaimed under U.S. Forest Service ownership. The creek has also been negatively impacted by past timber harvest activities.

Granite Creek is a large 41,264-hectare (16,712-acre) watershed on the east side of Lake Pend Oreille. Bull trout habitat is patchy and has been affected by urban development in the floodplain, roads, and timber harvest. Sullivan Springs is a spring-fed tributary that enters Granite Creek about 1 kilometer (0.6 mile) upstream of the lake, and it is an important spawning stream for bull trout and kokanee salmon. Bull trout spawning activity in the drainage has been erratic, varying from no redds in 1992 to as many as 132 redds in 1997 (LPOWAG 1999).

Bull trout in the interconnected Lake Pend Oreille watershed appear to be entirely adfluvial (PBTTAT 1998a). Some fish make extensive spawning migrations into the larger tributaries beginning in March and April (PBTTAT 1998a). A fall migration also occurs (August and September) into the Clark Fork River (Pratt and Huston 1993) and other Lake Pend Oreille tributaries.

Flathead Recovery Subunit

The North and Middle Forks of the Flathead River drainage comprise most of the remaining unblocked portion of the Flathead River system upstream of Flathead Lake. The headwaters of the North Fork Flathead River are in British Columbia. The North Fork Flathead River flows south into the United States and is bordered by Glacier National Park to the east and the Flathead National Forest to the west. The headwaters of the Middle Fork Flathead River are in the Bob Marshall and Great Bear Wilderness areas. From the confluence with Bear Creek downstream to its junction with the North Fork Flathead River, the Middle Fork Flathead River forms the southern boundary of Glacier National Park.

From the confluence of the North and Middle Forks of the Flathead River, the mainstem Flathead River flows approximately 88 kilometers (55 river miles) to the inlet of Flathead Lake. The South Fork of the Flathead River, controlled by Hungry Horse Dam since 1953, enters the Flathead River approximately 16 kilometers (10 miles) downstream of the confluence of the North and Middle Forks of the Flathead

River. These three forks of the Flathead River have a combined drainage area of 11,561 square kilometers (4,464 square miles) and an average annual discharge of 274.7 cubic meters per second (9,699 cubic feet per second), as measured at Columbia Falls (USGS 2001).

Other major tributaries of the Flathead River include the Stillwater and Whitefish Rivers, which drain the valley floor and mountain ranges to the west. The Whitefish River joins the Stillwater River about 5 kilometers (3 miles) before its confluence with the Flathead River, approximately 35 kilometers (22 miles) upstream of Flathead Lake. Bull trout are rarely encountered today in the Whitefish and Stillwater Rivers. Anecdotal data from newspaper accounts around 1900 indicate that, 100 years ago, bull trout, and particularly westslope cutthroat trout and mountain whitefish, were much more abundant in those streams (Inter Lake, *in litt.*, 1900). Large log drives were conducted down those rivers during that era, and several wooden dams that were built onstream at sawmills and lake outlets appear to have obstructed fish passage. At the dam sites, large numbers of migrating trout and whitefish were harvested by anglers, often with snag hooks and even dynamite, and the combined abuses appear to have rapidly depleted the fish runs (Inter Lake, *in litt.*, 1900). Today, these rivers were judged by the Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group to be low-priority streams for restoration because of the long-term nature of the decline and the existing degraded habitat conditions (MBTSG 1995c). Summer water temperatures are not suitable in these streams for bull trout, and they may also have been marginal historically due to the fact that the rivers flow through large lowland lakes (Upper and Lower Stillwater Lakes and Whitefish Lake).

Land ownership in the 2.4 million-hectare (5.9 million-acre) Flathead River basin (including the South Fork Flathead, Swan, and lower Flathead Rivers) is 40 percent U.S. Forest Service (including 445,500 hectares [1.1 million-acres] of wilderness), 10 percent National Park Service (Glacier National Park), 10 percent Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes, 3 percent State of Montana, and 31 percent private (Flathead River Basin Environmental Impact Statement 1983). Nearly 5 percent of the drainage basin lies in the headwaters of the North Fork Flathead River in British Columbia.

Flathead Lake has the largest surface area of any natural freshwater lake in the western United States, covering 49,613 hectares (122,500 acres) (Flathead River Basin Environmental Impact Statement 1983). It has a mean depth of 50 meters (165 feet) and a maximum depth of 113 meters (370 feet). Most of the lake exceeds 20 meters (65 feet) in depth, except for South Bay, which has a maximum depth of 10 meters (33 feet).

The Flathead Lake bull trout population is among the most intensively studied and monitored bull trout populations in the world. Within the Flathead Recovery Subunit, at least 27 natural lakes have historical evidence of bull trout populations, and most of these lake populations form their own bull trout core areas. Some lakes are small (including 8 that are less than 100 acres) and may have historically held only low numbers of bull trout. Available fisheries information indicates that the migratory life form of bull trout predominates in all these lake and river systems. Adult bull trout migrate into tributary drainages, usually upstream of each lake, to spawn. The juvenile fish rear in the tributaries for one to three years before moving back downstream to the river and lake, where they spend several additional years as subadults prior to maturity at the age of about six years (Fraley and Shepard 1989). The resident life form of bull trout may occur in low numbers in some tributary streams, but conclusive documentation of this life form is not currently available.

The Swan River flows generally north for approximately 106 kilometers (66 miles) from its headwaters in the Swan and Mission Mountain ranges to Flathead Lake, where it enters at the town of Bigfork, Montana. Fifty-three named tributaries enter the river from the Swan and Mission Mountain ranges. Three relatively large lakes are linked directly to the Swan River drainage. The southernmost lake, covering 294 hectares (726 acres), is Lindbergh Lake, which the upper Swan River flows through. Approximately 8 kilometers (5 miles) downstream of Lindbergh Lake, Holland Creek enters the river after flowing through the 165-hectare (408-acre) Holland Lake. The Swan River then flows approximately 56 kilometers (35 miles) to 1,085-hectare (2,680-acre) Swan Lake, the largest lake in the drainage. Leaving Swan Lake, the river continues for 23 kilometers (14 miles) downstream to a small run-of-the-river impoundment created by Bigfork Dam. This dam (built after the power plant was first installed in 1902) is 3.67 meters (12 feet) high and contains a 4.1-megawatt hydroelectric facility. It is currently owned and operated by PacifiCorp

and is scheduled for Federal Energy Regulatory Commission relicensing in 2002. Downstream of Bigfork Dam, the Swan River cascades through a 2-kilometer (1-mile) high-gradient reach before entering Flathead Lake. The Swan River drainage area is 1,080 square kilometers (671 square miles), measured at the outlet of Swan Lake.

Land ownership in the Swan River basin is mixed. Approximately 45 percent of the drainage is managed by the Flathead National Forest, 20 percent by Plum Creek Timber Company, 10 percent by the Montana Department of Natural Resources, and 25 percent by other private landowners. Timber production is the dominant land management activity.

Historically, because of the deterrent effect of warmer water in Swan Lake outflows on upstream-migrating adults, fish from Flathead Lake probably did not routinely migrate upstream through Swan Lake. Similarly, warmer lake outflows may have limited travel of other adfluvial bull trout populations among the interconnected lakes in this subunit.

Construction of Hungry Horse Dam in 1953 blocked access to the entire South Fork Flathead River drainage, and about 38 percent of the total stream length that was once available to Flathead Lake bull trout was cut off (Zubik and Fraley 1987). Bull trout upstream of the dam now reach maturity in Hungry Horse Reservoir, or possibly in the South Fork Flathead River, instead of in Flathead Lake or the main Flathead River.

The South Fork Flathead has a drainage area of 4,307 square kilometers (1,663 square miles) and an average annual discharge of 100.5 cubic meters per second (3,549 cubic feet per second), measured 3 kilometers (2 miles) downstream of Hungry Horse Dam (USGS 2001). Water stored in Hungry Horse Reservoir is used for power production, irrigation, recreation, and most recently to provide downstream flows for salmon passage in the lower Columbia River. The usable capacity of the reservoir is 62,907 cubic kilometers (51,000 acre-feet), an amount that allows for substantial flood control storage in the headwaters of the Columbia River system.

Little quantitative information exists about historical bull trout distribution and abundance in the South Fork Flathead River drainage. Before Hungry Horse Dam was

constructed, this drainage was considered a major spawning and rearing area for the migratory bull trout from Flathead Lake (Zubik and Fraley 1987). Anecdotal information suggests that large adult fish from Flathead Lake were seasonally common in the South Fork Flathead River and several of its major tributaries.

A population of migratory bull trout, trapped behind the impoundment, now occupies Hungry Horse Reservoir and the South Fork Flathead River. These fish migrate into tributary drainages to spawn and rear. Land in the South Fork Flathead River drainage is almost entirely (98 percent) within the Flathead National Forest. Reservoir tributaries and the lower one-third of the South Fork River drainage are managed timberlands, while the upper two-thirds of the South Fork Flathead River drainage lies within the Bob Marshall Wilderness Area.

Priest Recovery Subunit

The entire Priest River basin is 2,536 square kilometers (979 square miles) in size (PBTTAT 1998b). The basin is primarily within the northwest corner of the Idaho Panhandle, within Bonner and Boundary Counties. Approximately 62 square kilometers (24 square miles) of the basin are in British Columbia, where the headwaters of the Upper Priest River originate in the Nelson Mountain Range. Headwaters of major tributaries on the western side of the basin are located in northeast Washington. The basin is flanked on the east and west sides by the Selkirk Mountain Range. Elevation within the basin ranges from 625 meters (2,051 feet) at low winter pool of Lake Pend Oreille (reservoir) behind Albeni Falls Dam to more than 2,135 meters (7,000 feet) within the Selkirk Mountains.

The lake complex is made up of Upper Priest Lake, a 4.3-kilometer (2.7-mile) connecting channel called the Priest River Thorofare, and Priest Lake. Priest Lake is the third largest natural lake that is entirely within Idaho and second largest in terms of volume. Water levels in the lakes and Priest River Thorofare are partially controlled by an outlet dam and structure at the southwest corner of the lower lake.

The climate in the Priest River watershed is transitional between a northern Pacific coastal type and a continental type (PBTTAT 1998b). July and August are the only distinct summer months, and temperatures are relatively mild because of the Pacific maritime influence (average daily summer maximums are around 28 degrees Celsius [82 degrees

Fahrenheit]). Winter temperatures are also relatively mild compared with areas east of the Rocky Mountains. Annual precipitation (rain and melted snow) averages 81 centimeters (32 inches) at lake surface equivalent elevation. Average precipitation within the peaks of the Selkirk Mountains can reach 152 centimeters (60 inches). At elevations above 1,463 meters (4,800 feet), snowfall accounts for more than 50 percent of total precipitation (PBTTAT 1998b). The wettest months are normally November, December, and January.

Upper Priest Lake has a surface area of 542 hectares (1,338 acres), a mean depth of 18.3 meters (60 feet), and a volume of 0.1 cubic kilometers (80,000 acre- feet) (PBTTAT 1998b). The lake has a short hydraulic residence time, about 3 months on average, and is heavily influenced by the major tributary, Upper Priest River. Lake level is controlled by the outlet dam on Priest Lake since the upper lake, connecting channel, and lower lake are all at the same elevation at summer pool. The main, or lower, Priest Lake has a surface area of 9,437 hectares (23,300 acres), a mean depth of 39 meters (128 feet), and a volume of 3.7 cubic kilometers (3,000,000 acre-feet). Average hydraulic residence time is about three years. The Priest River Thorofare contributes about 40 percent of the annual inflow to Priest Lake.

The Priest River basin has numerous tributaries. The Upper Priest River portion of the watershed complex drains into the upper lake and into the Thorofare, with a total drainage area of 528 square kilometers (204 square miles). Two large tributaries to the lake, Upper Priest River and Hughes Fork, join before entering the northwest corner of the lake. From the Canadian border, Upper Priest River flows through a steep side canyon at a moderate gradient (around 20 meters per kilometer or 100 feet per mile), and then flattens into a fairly large floodplain for the last 3 kilometers (2 miles). A waterfall about 1 kilometer (0.6 mile) south of the border is the limit of upstream fish migration. Hughes Fork has a moderate gradient and includes a large wetland area, Hughes Meadows. Trapper Creek, which drains the northeast corner of the upper lake watershed, and Caribou Creek, which drains to the Thorofare from the east about 1.5 kilometers (1 mile) upstream of its mouth, are the other major watersheds in the Upper Priest Lake drainage. These tributaries originate in the Selkirk Mountains and have typically high gradients.

The main Priest Lake portion of the drainage begins near the mouth of the Priest River Thorofare and extends to the southern end of the lake near the town of Coolin. The Thorofare, draining the upper lake, is by far the highest flow volume tributary to the lower

lake. Major streams draining the Selkirk Range on the east side of the lake are Lion Creek, Two Mouth Creek, Indian Creek, Hunt Creek, and Soldier Creek. All these streams, except Soldier Creek, are relatively confined and of high gradient above the reaches that are near the mouths. The lower end of Soldier Creek has a flat gradient and a large associated wetland. Seven minor flow streams are interspersed between the major east-side tributaries. From Squaw Creek south to Fenton Creek, headwaters are at lower elevations, about halfway up the Selkirk Range. Chase Creek is outflow from Chase Lake. While Chase Creek is a moderately sized subwatershed, Chase Creek flow volume into Priest Lake is low. This watershed is flat, with primarily groundwater resources, which do appear to be hydraulically linked to the lake (PBTTAT 1998b).

The west side of the Priest Lake subbasin extends from Beaver Creek, discharging just south of the Thorofare, to the southern end of the lake (PBTTAT 1998b). The subbasin has one major stream, Granite Creek, and one moderate-size stream, Kalispell Creek. The remaining tributaries are of low volume. The Granite Creek subwatershed is the single largest in the basin. Headwaters of the South and North Forks Granite Creek are at lower elevations than east-side streams, mostly between 1,200 to 1,500 meters (4,000 to 5,000 feet). Overall, the average gradient of Granite Creek is low, and many flat sections have associated wetlands. The subwatersheds of Reeder Creek, Kalispell Creek, Reynolds Creek, and Lamb Creek have large areas of flat gradient in the middle and lower elevations. The groundwater systems are extensive in these watersheds, and many branch streams go subterranean prior to discharging into the primary tributary channels.

Vegetation of the area varies in association with soil moisture conditions, slope aspect, elevation, precipitation, temperature, wildfire history, and land use patterns. The area is predominately coniferous forest of mixed species. The make-up of coniferous species has changed through time because of timber harvesting and replanting, fire, and plant diseases. The majority of west-side land is in the Kaniksu National Forest (Priest Lake Ranger District). The northern boundary extends to, and includes, the Upper Priest River watershed to the Canadian border. The U.S. Forest Service also manages the three large islands on the lower lake: Kalispell, Bartoo, and Eightmile Islands. The Upper Priest River headwater lands are administered by the British Columbia Ministry of Forests. Private property comprises approximately 10 percent of the west-side land total (PBTTAT 1998b). In the Nordman and Lamb Creek areas, some blocks of commercial timberlands are owned by Stimson Lumber, and a few large private holdings are in agricultural use.

More than 90 percent of the east side of the basin is owned by the State of Idaho, with the northern boundary incorporating the Trapper Creek watershed (PBTTAT 1998b). Most of this land is administered by the Idaho Department of Lands under the State Endowment Trust. Some State land is managed by the Idaho Department of Parks and Recreation as the Priest Lake State Park. Through the years, various property exchange agreements have transferred a substantial acreage of private, commercial timberlands to the State, although some blocks of private forest land still exist.

Around the 116 kilometers (72 miles) of Priest Lake shoreline, approximately 26 percent of the property is privately owned (PBTTAT 1998b), and the most concentrated residential and business development has occurred on this property. Within the Federal- and State-owned lands, considerable waterfront development has occurred through lease lot programs.

Information on bull trout distribution in the Priest River basin in pre-development times (pre-1880's) is scarce and is presented mostly in oral histories of long-time residents (PBTTAT 1998b). Few manmade barriers to fish movement existed in the 1800's, so migratory stocks in the Priest Lake basin could access and potentially exchange genetic material with other stocks residing in the Priest River, Pend Oreille River, and Lake Pend Oreille (Gilbert and Evermann 1895; PBTTAT 1998a).

Bull trout have been reported in most of the large accessible tributaries to Upper Priest Lake and Priest Lake (PBTTAT 1998b). The extent and type of bull trout utilization is partially documented.

DISTRIBUTION AND ABUNDANCE

Status of Bull Trout at the Time of Listing

In the status summary prepared for the final listing rule (USFWS 1998), a total of 65 subpopulations of bull trout were recognized within the Clark Fork River basin. In the Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit, bull trout subpopulations were identified for the upper Clark Fork River (including Rock Creek), 27 separate streams in the Bitterroot River basin, and the Blackfoot River. In the Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit, the subpopulations were identified as Lake Pend Oreille and the Pend Oreille River (downstream of the lake to Albeni Falls Dam), Cabinet Gorge Reservoir, Noxon Reservoir, and the lower Clark Fork River. In the Flathead Recovery Subunit, 29 lakes were identified, Flathead Lake being the largest. Each lake was considered to hold a separate bull trout subpopulation. Because of the degree of physical isolation, most of these disconnected lake-based local populations were referred to as "disjunct" by the Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group (MBTSG 1995c, 1995d, 1996b).

The geographic size of the subpopulations that is recognized by the status summary prepared for the listing rule (USFWS 1998) varies greatly, from the large units in the Clark Fork and Flathead Rivers to the very small watersheds associated with the Bitterroot River and some of the disjunct lakes. About two-thirds (43 of the 65 subpopulations) were considered to be depressed; 3, probably extirpated; 17, of unknown status; and 2, stable (USFWS 1998). Ten of the subpopulations were considered to have a declining trend, including 2 of the largest subpopulations, in Lake Pend Oreille and Flathead Lake. Trend was considered unknown in 53 of the remaining 55 subpopulations, with 1 stable subpopulation in Hungry Horse Reservoir and a single increasing subpopulation in Swan Lake. Over 70 percent (46 of 65) of the bull trout subpopulations in this recovery unit were considered to be at risk of stochastic extirpation due to a single spawning stream and/or small population size. This percentage indicates that fragmentation is a major issue for this recovery unit (USFWS 1998).

The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service considered introduced species (affecting 48 subpopulations), forestry (47 subpopulations), residential development (32 subpopulations), agriculture (30 subpopulations), grazing (29 subpopulations), water quality impacts (26

subpopulations), dams (14 subpopulations), and mining (6 subpopulations) to be the greatest threats to bull trout in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit (USFWS 1998). The magnitude of threats was rated high for 46 of the 65 subpopulations, and in 50 subpopulations (77 percent) the threats were considered imminent.

The best scientific evidence available indicates that the subpopulation groups that the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service described in the listing rule are each comprised of one to many local populations. The rest of this recovery chapter addresses recovery actions and analysis of core areas and their local populations, rather than refer to subpopulation groups.

Current Distribution and Abundance

With the probable exception of the upper end of the Clark Fork River drainage (upstream of Rock Creek), which has been severely degraded by contamination by heavy metals, bull trout continue to be present (albeit sometimes in low numbers) in nearly all major watersheds where they likely occurred historically in this recovery unit. Because bull trout exhibit a patchy distribution, even in pristine habitats (Rieman and McIntyre 1993), the fish are not expected to simultaneously occupy all available habitats (Rieman *et al.* 1997). This patchiness is evident in some drainages in western Montana, where bull trout are prevalent in tributaries on one side of a watershed, but absent or nearly so on the other. Examples are the Blackfoot River drainage, where bull trout are seldom found in tributaries south of the river, and the North Fork Flathead River, where bull trout are generally absent from the lower ends of Glacier National Park tributaries, most of which drain relatively large glacial lakes that have headwaters containing bull trout. These distribution gaps often reflect natural conditions as bull trout distribution is strongly correlated with habitat suitability
(see Chapter 1). It is important to recognize that in some watersheds, or portions of them, bull trout were probably never numerous because of natural habitat limitations.

However, significant local populations of bull trout have been extirpated in recent times. Examples include the migratory form in the Bitterroot River drainage and in portions of the severely degraded upper Clark Fork River drainage. Bull trout numbers have been reduced to remnant status in several lakes in Glacier National Park and elsewhere in lakes in the Flathead River basin, that have been stocked with (or invaded by) lake trout; such lakes include Whitefish, Tally, and Upper and Lower Stillwater Lakes (Fredenberg 2000).

Population trend data is unavailable for bull trout in the lower Clark Fork River drainage prior to construction of Thompson Falls, Noxon Rapids, and Cabinet Gorge Dams. Since construction of the dams, the catch of bull trout during gill net surveys in the reservoirs (between 1960 and 1985) indicates that bull trout declined in Noxon Reservoir but remained somewhat stable in Cabinet Gorge Reservoir (Huston 1985). When Pratt and Huston (1993) evaluated the past and current bull trout population status of the Lower Clark Fork River drainage, they concluded that local bull trout populations in Cabinet Gorge and Noxon Reservoirs are currently stable, but fragile. More recently, Washington Water Power (now Avista) conducted extensive gill net surveys (in preparation for Federal Energy Regulatory Commission relicensing) and documented few bull trout in the catch (Washington Water Power Company 1998). While these local populations persist at this time, they are susceptible to extirpation from events that could cause further declines.

The strongest remaining bull trout population in the Priest River basin is found in Upper Priest Lake (PBTTAT 1998b). These adfluvial fish spawn in tributaries to the Upper Priest River and Trapper Creek. About 100 adults have been estimated (Fredericks 1999).

In recent years, in the Clark Fork River basin, emphasis has been placed on documenting distribution and determining abundance of bull trout by using redd counts (LPOWAG 1999). Because of the large size of the migratory fish and because of the geology of the streams that generally makes redds easy to recognize, redd counts (Spalding 1997) have been shown to provide a repeatable method of indexing spawner escapement in many streams in this recovery unit (Rieman and McIntyre 1996). However, several authors have cautioned that redd counts should not be relied upon as the sole method of population monitoring (Maxell 1999, Rieman and Myers 1997) and that redd counts may, in fact, lead to erroneous conclusions about population status and trend.

Table 1 summarizes the status of redd count information for the core areas designated in this recovery unit. Thirteen core areas have a history of redd count information for at least 3 consecutive years. The most complete database has been accumulated for the Flathead Lake, Swan Lake, and Lake Pend Oreille core areas, with redd counts conducted annually in multiple index streams for most of the past 20 years. Similar trend data has been accumulated for Rock Creek, the Blackfoot River, Priest Lakes and Upper Priest River, and several of the Flathead basin lakes, but the period of record generally goes back 5, or fewer, years. Only sporadic redd counts have been conducted in

the majority of the remaining core areas. In some cases, the numbers of bull trout are too low to accurately identify primary spawning reaches of tributary streams.

Additional effort has been focused in some basins on monitoring juvenile abundance in primary spawning and rearing habitat. The basins with such monitoring data tend to be the same as those with extensive redd count information. In the Flathead River basin, a composite index of juvenile (age 1 and older) abundance has varied from a high of about 7.8 fish per 100 square meters (1,000 square feet) in 1985 to a low of about 0.9 fish per 100 square meters (1,000 square feet) in 1996 (Deleray *et al*. 1999). Assessing trends in bull trout abundance from a single parameter is difficult, given the relatively complex life cycle of the migratory fish. Until sufficient site-specific data has been accumulated to develop more information about natural variability, the interrelationships between juvenile abundance and adult return and between redd counts and juvenile abundance will remain largely speculative. Some of these issues are currently being explored by research projects in the Flathead and Pend Oreille River watersheds. Intensive monitoring of the Flathead, Swan, Hungry Horse, and Pend Oreille Lakes populations is critical to further develop this information. It is also important that these data sets be continually evaluated and methods upgraded for the purpose of developing models and predictive tools.

Table 1. Summary of redd count information for Clark Fork Recovery Unit core areas during the period 1996–2000. Table includes only counts for those local populations that were monitored at least three times during the five-year period.

Recovery Subunit	Core Area	No. of Local Populations Monitored	Mean Total No. Redds Counted per Year (1996–2000)
Upper Clark Fork	Clark Fork Rive Section 1 (Upstream of Milltown Dam)	1	36
	Rock Creek	5	165
	Blackfoot River	5	233
	Clearwater River	0	---
	Clark Fork River Section 2 (Milltown Dam to Flathead River), including Jocko River and Mission Creek	0	---
	West Fork Bitterroot River	1	3
	Bitterroot River	2	60
Lower Clark Fork	Lower Flathead River (including Jocko River and Mission Creek)	0	---
	Clark Fork River Section 3 (Flathead River to Thompson Falls Dam)	0	---
	Noxon Reservoir	0	---
	Cabinet Gorge Reservoir	0	---
	Lake Pend Oreille	17	620
Priest	Priest Lake(s) and Upper Priest River	11	39
Flathead	Frozen Lake	0	---
	Upper Kintla Lake	0	---
	Kintla Lake	0	---
	Akokala Lake	0	---
	Bowman Lake	0	---
	Cerulean, Quartz, and Middle Quartz Lakes	0	---
	Lower Quartz Lake	0	---
	Cyclone Lake	1	1

Recovery Subunit	Core Area	No. of Local Populations Monitored	Mean Total No. Redds Counted per Year (1996–2000)
	Logging Lake	0	---
	Arrow Lake	0	---
	Trout Lake	0	---
	Lake Isabel	0	---
	Harrison Lake	0	---
	Lincoln Lake	0	---
	Lake McDonald	0	---
	Upper Stillwater Lake	1	26
	Upper Whitefish Lake	1	11
	Whitefish Lake	0	---
	Flathead Lake	8	170
	Doctor Lake	0	---
	Big Salmon Lake	1	58
	Hungry Horse Reservoir	7	400
	Lindbergh Lake	0	---
	Holland Lake	1	16
	Swan Lake	10	1,161

REASONS FOR BULL TROUT DECLINE

Ecological processes or conditions that regulate or limit bull trout production are known as limiting factors. In the Clark Fork Recovery Unit, limiting factors are not equally distributed across the basin—what may be a limiting factor for bull trout in one recovery subunit or stream may not be significantly influencing bull trout in another. Therefore, discussion of limiting factors is presented, in context, on a subunit-by-subunit basis.

Water Quality

Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

Water quality in the Clark Fork River is improved downstream of Missoula by dilution from large tributaries such as the Blackfoot and Bitterroot Rivers. However, due to warm summer water temperatures and other habitat limitations, the mainstem Clark Fork River supports lower populations of coldwater salmonids than would be expected. A major water quality issue in this portion of the Clark Fork River mainstem is the addition of nutrients and other pollutants to the river from sources such as the Missoula Municipal Sewage Plant and the Stone Container Corporation Kraft Mill. The primary nonpoint sources of sediments and nutrients are the Bitterroot River and the Blackfoot River (MDHES 1994). There has been a growing concern over increases in algae levels in the river, increases that are stimulated by nutrients and that result in depressed concentrations of dissolved oxygen in mid-summer (Watson 1985).

Many water quality studies have been done, or are underway, in the Clark Fork River. For more detailed information about water quality issues in this river, see, among others, Watson (1985 and 1991), Ingman (1992a, 1992b), and Knudson (1992).

Excessive concentrations of nutrients (phosphorus and nitrogen) also cause water quality problems in the Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit. High concentrations of nutrients have led to blooms of filamentous algae in the Clark Fork River upstream of Missoula, impairing beneficial uses of river water (USEPA 1993). The main nutrient point sources are the sewage effluent from the towns of Butte and Deer Lodge.

Dams

Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

Milltown Dam was constructed on the Clark Fork River in 1906 and 1907 just downstream of the confluence with the Blackfoot River (Periman 1985). Milltown Dam is a run-of-the-river facility with no water storage capacity, so the impact on bull trout is related to fish passage and not to dam operations. Each spring, concentrations of several fish species are observed at the base of Milltown Dam. These fish are assumed to be attempting an upstream migration past the dam. Radio transmitters implanted in bull trout that had migrated to the face of the dam revealed that, when these fish were passed upstream, they migrated to streams presumed to be spawning streams in the Blackfoot River and Rock Creek drainages (Swanberg 1997).

Pennsylvania Power and Light of Montana (formerly Montana Power Company), which owns and operates Milltown Dam, is currently operating under a license extension from the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission. The company had earlier announced plans to drop the hydroelectric license and discontinue generating power at the facility. Deliberations are occurring over whether to implement a fisheries mitigation plan that includes provisions for providing selective fish passage at this facility or remove the dam altogether. The decision is complicated immensely by the presence of an accumulation of millions of cubic yards of toxic sediment in the forebay of the dam, a result of the mining legacy upstream in Butte and Anaconda. The entire area is part of a Superfund project of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. A number of advocacy groups are pushing for sediment and dam removal, primarily because of the problems with potential pollution of the Missoula aquifer. Fish passage is also a major issue in the deliberations. In addition, northern pike have recently proliferated in the reservoir behind the dam and have been documented to eat bull trout among their prey species (Missoulian, *in litt.*, 2000).

East Fork Dam on the East Fork Rock Creek (southwest of Georgetown Lake) is also a barrier to upstream fish passage. Operation of East Fork Reservoir results in seasonal dewatering of the downstream reaches of East Fork Rock Creek. Trout Creek and Flint Creek are used as a conveyance channel for East Fork Reservoir water and are impacted by excess stream flow.

A small dam at the mouth of the Blackfoot River (at the Stimpson Lumber Mill) may be a seasonal fish passage barrier. The Nevada Creek Dam and dams on the Clearwater Lakes (Seely Lake and Placid Lake) are also fish passage barriers in the Blackfoot River drainage. Fish passage barriers were installed at the outlets of Rainy Lake and Lake Inez in the 1960's in an attempt to control the reintroduction of nongame fish into these lakes, following chemical rehabilitation. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks is researching the feasibility of removing these barriers.

There are no hydroelectric facilities in the Bitterroot drainage, but there are several irrigation storage reservoirs in the valley. These dams probably alter nutrient and sediment balance and downstream flow patterns, temperature regimes, and habitat. Fred Burr Dam washed out years ago, and the downstream area is still suffering from the effects of high bedload (sediment not in suspension, dragged or rolled along the river bottom) movement.

Several dams in the Bitterroot River drainage are high in the mountains, generally upstream of local populations of bull trout. Lake Como Dam (on Rock Creek, a Bitterroot River tributary) is a barrier to fish migration. However, the drainage does not support bull trout.

Painted Rocks Reservoir on the West Fork Bitterroot River supports a bull trout core area that includes inflowing tributaries for spawning and rearing. The reservoir is annually drawn down by releases for downstream flow and irrigation purposes. Little water remains in the reservoir during fall and winter months. A minimum pool reservation is needed for bull trout since Painted Rocks has been identified as foraging, migrating, and overwintering habitat. Painted Rocks Dam is a barrier to bull trout migration. However, it is also a barrier to upstream dispersal of brown and rainbow trout and could protect bull trout from possible competition and predation by introduced species.

The Mountain Water Company Dam on lower Rattlesnake Creek blocks fish passage from the Clark Fork River into the upper watershed. It is doubtful that Clark Fork River bull trout successfully spawn in the reaches of Rattlesnake Creek below the dam, although adult bull trout congregate annually below the dam in an attempt to migrate upstream (MBTSG 1996e). Above the dam, Rattlesnake Creek supports bull trout, and the migrants at the dam are probably a fluvial component of that local population. Rattlesnake Creek is the first major watershed downstream of Milltown Dam, which is approximately 10

kilometers (6 miles) upstream on the Clark Fork River from the confluence of Rattlesnake Creek. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks biologists are implementing fish passage at this dam, and because the watershed has been protected as a municipal water supply, it has potential to provide significant benefits to bull trout recovery.

Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

Three dams on the lower Clark Fork River have significantly reduced the amount of spawning and rearing habitat available to Lake Pend Oreille bull trout. Other effects of these dams and of other tributary diversions to bull trout habitat include changes in water quality (temperature, sediment, and nutrients) and quantity, lake drawdowns, a reduction in shoreline food sources, and direct losses of fish into water conveyance systems (turbines, spillways, or water delivery systems).

Built in 1913 on the Clark Fork River, Thompson Falls Hydroelectric Development eliminated migration and spawning access from Lake Pend Oreille to 86 percent of the Clark Fork River basin, though not all of that basin was historically used by bull trout (Pratt and Huston 1993). Between 1913 and 1951, only 108 kilometers (67 miles) of the Clark Fork River remained barrier free between Lake Pend Oreille and Thompson Falls Dam, providing access to spawning tributaries in Montana. Cabinet Gorge Dam, completed in 1952, further isolated Lake Pend Oreille bull trout from important spawning habitat downstream of Thompson Falls. Before Cabinet Gorge Dam was constructed, bull trout used at least 10 tributary streams in the 93 kilometers (58 river miles) between Thompson Falls and the present site of Cabinet Gorge Dam (PBTTAT 1998a). Noxon Rapids Dam was constructed in the mid 1950's and lies between the other two major dams, creating a series of three impoundments over 113 kilometers (70 miles) of the Clark Fork River.

Thompson Falls Dam is operated by Pennsylvania Power and Light of Montana as a run-of-the-river facility. It has very limited storage capacity. Cabinet Gorge and Noxon Rapids Dams are owned and operated by Avista Corporation. The operational agreement for Noxon Reservoir allows for a 3-meter (10-foot) maximum seasonal drawdown, which may be exceeded under special circumstances. Cabinet Gorge currently functions as a re-regulating facility[1] for Noxon Rapids Dam. Cabinet Gorge drawdowns rarely exceed 1.5

[1] "Re-regulating facility" refers to a secondary dam located downstream of a major hydro dam. The purpose of these types of facilities is to smooth out peaking flows from the larger dam upstream. Water levels in the re-regulating facility show

meters (5 feet) (Huston 1985). The aquatic environment has benefitted to some extent from the water level stability provided by the current Noxon Rapids operational agreement. However, there is some concern that this operational scenario benefits other fish species (*e.g.*, largemouth and smallmouth bass, northern pike) to the detriment of bull trout.

Noxon Rapids Reservoir has a surface area of 3,240 hectares (8,000 acres) at full pool and 2,228 hectares (5,500 acres) at minimum pool (Huston 1985). Discharge from Noxon Dam varies daily and seasonally depending on the river inflow and the demand for electrical power (Huston 1988). Noxon Rapids Reservoir is divided into two distinct habitat types with a broad transition zone that varies depending on river flow and project operation. The upstream end of the reservoir, generally between Beaver Creek Bay and Thompson Falls Dam, is characterized by visible current at almost all times of the year. The portion of the reservoir downstream of Beaver Creek Bay has visible water currents only during spring high water or during severe reservoir drafting (Huston 1985).

Noxon Rapids Reservoir exhibits varying degrees of stratification, depending on river flow and ambient conditions, and occasionally has a weak thermocline (documented in late July 1994 at about 7.5 meters [25 feet] [MBTSG 1996a]). Surface temperatures average about 22 degrees Celsius (72 degrees Fahrenheit) during the hottest days, but uncommonly reach or exceed 24 degrees Celsius (75 degrees Fahrenheit). Generally, oxygen concentrations remain within the tolerance level for salmonids (Huston 1985).

Cabinet Gorge Reservoir is 32 kilometers (20 miles) long and has a surface area of 1,296 hectares (3,200 acres) at full pool and 992 hectares (2,450 acres) at minimum pool (Huston 1988). The reservoir currently has typical daily water level fluctuations of 0.6 to 1.2 meters (2 to 4 feet). The temperature of the reservoir is nearly isothermal, and there is limited coldwater habitat in the reservoir during the warm summer months. However, tributary and groundwater inflows may provide some areas of coldwater refuge for bull trout. Maximum temperature rarely exceeds 22 degrees Celsius (72 degrees Fahrenheit), except in backwater shallows outside the main current pattern. Dissolved oxygen levels in the reservoir are adequate for fish at all depths.

---

extremes in water fluctuations, but presence of the facility tends to stabilize flows downstream.

Downstream of Cabinet Gorge Dam, bull trout from Lake Pend Oreille are known to take refuge and spawn in coldwater spring areas that are found on the south shore of the Clark Fork River near the State of Idaho's Cabinet Gorge Fish Hatchery. Spawning surveys since 1992 show a high of 18 redds in 1995 and a low of 2 in 1992 (LPOWAG 1999). It is unknown whether these fish are progeny of bull trout spawning successfully in the channel or are fish which have dropped down from upriver tributaries and are unable to return because of Cabinet Gorge Dam. Recent genetic evidence appears to support the latter hypothesis as bull trout sampled from below the dam are genetically similar to upriver stocks (Neraas and Spruell 2000). Juvenile habitat usage in the river is unknown, and no life history information is available for juvenile bull trout that may recruit from the river. The genetic evaluation provided support for passing a limited number of fish upstream above the dam to test the potential benefits to upstream populations, and that passage is currently occurring.

During high flow events, Cabinet Gorge Dam may spill up to 2,832 cubic meters per second (100,000 cubic feet per second) or more in addition to the power plant's generating capacity of approximately 1,062 cubic meters per second (37,500 cubic feet per second). When significant volumes of water are passed over the spillway, atmospheric gases become entrained in the water column. During 1997, gas supersaturation levels, or total dissolved gas, exceeded 140 percent of saturation. The State of Idaho's water quality standard is 110 percent. In 1997, the supersaturated gas plume extended all the way down the Clark Fork River and across the northern end of Lake Pend Oreille. Fish exposed to high total dissolved gas levels for periods of time can be harmed or killed. At this time, the population effects of these high dissolved gas levels are unknown in the lake or river. Studies conducted in the next few years as part of the Settlement Agreement between Avista and the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission are intended to identify impacts resulting from high total dissolved gas levels below Cabinet Gorge Dam and to develop and implement abatement strategies.

Peaking power flows downstream of Noxon and Cabinet Gorge Dams can fluctuate on an hourly basis. Avista maintains a required minimum flow of at least 141.6 cubic meters per second (5,000 cubic feet per second), below Cabinet Gorge Dam in the 11 to 14 kilometers (7 to 9 miles) of river upstream of Lake Pend Oreille (PBTTAT 1998a).

While none of these hydroelectric projects provides upstream fish passage, downstream movement has been demonstrated. Marked hatchery fish planted in Noxon Reservoir have been caught in Cabinet Gorge Reservoir and Lake Pend Oreille (Huston 1985). The turbine intakes on these dams are currently not screened, and evaluation is occurring to determine the effects of unscreened turbine intakes on downstream migrants.

Additional studies funded by Avista during the next 45 years (the term of the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission license) will explore and implement options for upstream passage of adult fish and safe passage for juveniles downstream, experiment with control of nonnative species in selected waters, monitor fish abundance and distribution, and research other elements that emphasize native species restoration (Washington Water Power Company 1998).

Kerr Dam, constructed in 1938 on the Flathead River near Buffalo Rapids (just downstream of Flathead Lake), is operated by Pennsylvania Power and Light of Montana. Formerly operated as a "load-following" or "peaking" facility, it has recently been converted to base load, meaning that flows from the dam no longer fluctuate dramatically and rapidly. Fluctuating flows are known to have reduced the food base (aquatic macroinvertebrates) in the lower Flathead River, a reduction that, in turn, has reduced the carrying capacity of the river for fish (Cross and DosSantos 1988). Pennsylvania Power and Light of Montana recently concluded negotiations with the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission for relicensing of Kerr Dam. The December 2000 relicensing terms include Kerr Dam flow modifications for the protection, mitigation, and enhancement of fisheries in the lower Flathead River, though the extent to which bull trout will benefit is unknown. Further discussion of Kerr Dam impacts is included in the following section (Flathead Recovery Subunit).

Albeni Falls Dam on the Pend Oreille River near the Idaho–Washington border interrupts habitat connectivity with the lower portion of the basin and also regulates water levels in Lake Pend Oreille and at the delta of the Clark Fork River. Gilbert and Evermann (1895) described Albeni Falls as "scarcely more than pretty steep rapids [that] would not interfere at all with the ascent of salmon." Albeni Falls Dam was built in 1952, about 42 kilometers (26 miles) downstream of the outlet of the lake on the Pend Oreille River. This dam significantly influences water levels in the lake and the Pend Oreille River. During the summer months, the dam holds the lake level artificially high, and the Pend Oreille River

downstream of the natural lake outlet essentially becomes a shallow arm of the lake. During the fall, the gates are opened at Albeni Falls, and water level is drawn down for flood control storage. Although this dam restricts upstream movement and functionally removes any downstream migrants from the Pend Oreille population, these effects are probably much less significant than other effects of this dam, such as those of lake level fluctuations on access to tributary streams and on the prey base (primarily impacts on kokanee salmon). Low winter water levels are thought to be the primary cause for the decline of kokanee salmon in the lake since the late 1960's because the lower lake levels forced kokanee salmon to spawn in shoreline gravels that had high levels of fine sediments (PBTTAT 1998a).

The December 2000 Biological Opinion, emanating from Endangered Species Act formal consultation between the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and Federal water project managers (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Bonneville Power Administration, and U.S. Bureau of Reclamation), contained reasonable and prudent measures prescribed for fish passage at Albeni Falls Dam (USFWS 2000): "... evaluate the feasibility of reestablishing bull trout passage at Albeni Falls Dam. If the information from these studies warrants consideration of modifications to the Albeni Falls facility, then the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service will work with the action agencies to implement these measures, as appropriate, or to reinitiate consultation, if necessary." As it pertains to lake levels in Lake Pend Oreille, the Biological Opinion stated that "... action agencies shall continue the lake winter elevations study to promote kokanee spawning/recruitment along the shoreline of Lake Pend Oreille."

Albeni Falls Dam and its operations may have negatively influenced overwintering habitat for bull trout. The dam fragments habitat believed to have been historically occupied (Pratt and Huston 1993). Lake Pend Oreille winter drawdown generally begins after Labor Day. Minimum pool (625 meters [2,051 feet] mean sea level) is normally reached between November 15 and December 1, with a target date of November 15 to facilitate kokanee salmon spawning. The Corps of Engineers is participating in the study mentioned above, initiated by the Idaho Department of Fish and Game in 1996, to evaluate benefits of leaving the winter lake level 1.2 meters (4 feet) higher to enhance kokanee salmon spawning on the lake shoreline (PBTTAT 1998a).

Migration by post-spawning bull trout out of Gold Creek may be hindered as an indirect result of lake level fluctuations caused by Albeni Falls Dam. Peak runoff flows in Lake Pend Oreille tributaries generally occur before the Clark Fork River peaks and fills the

lake to its summer elevation (629 meters [2,062 feet] mean sea level). Consequently, coarse bedload material carried downstream by Gold Creek during high flow is deposited in an alluvial fan that has formed near the winter lake level elevation. In the summer, when Albeni Falls Dam brings the lake up to full pool, the alluvial fan is underwater and so cannot armor with silt (and other fine material) and grow vegetation. This water level change leaves a coarse and porous alluvial fan. In years with substantial runoff, when considerable bedload material is deposited at the mouth of the stream, late-season flow cannot maintain itself on top of the porous substrate and goes subsurface, creating difficult downstream migration conditions (PBTTAT 1998a). This scenario also occurs to some extent on several other tributaries.

Flathead Recovery Subunit

The Bigfork Dam on the Swan River, built after the power plant was first installed in 1902 and then later improved, probably blocked some bull trout migration from Flathead Lake into the Swan River. Hungry Horse Dam completely blocked the migration of bull trout from Flathead Lake into the South Fork Flathead River, beginning in 1953. Together, these two facilities reduced by nearly 50 percent the potential spawning and rearing habitat available to Flathead Lake bull trout (Fraley *et al.* 1989), although not all of that habitat was necessarily occupied.

Bigfork Dam blocked the Swan River drainage from Flathead Lake, but the ramifications of this loss to either system are not well understood. Anecdotal evidence from newspaper accounts around 1900 indicates that the mouth of the Swan River (or Big Fork as it was called then) was a very popular fishing spot in the spring (April to May), with apparent concentrations of bull trout and westslope cutthroat, and again in the fall (November), for mountain whitefish (Inter Lake, *in litt.*, 1900). It is not clear whether those fish migrated up the Swan River, were simply drawn there because of proximity to the mouth of the Flathead River, or were drawn there for foraging opportunities or other reasons. The Flathead Recovery Subunit Team presumes that limited genetic interchange between the Swan and Flathead River drainages probably occurred naturally because of thermal regimes. Bigfork Dam currently prevents introduced fish species, especially lake trout present in the Flathead River drainage, from migrating upstream into the Swan River drainage. This isolation is now an overall benefit to Swan Lake, which is treated as a separate bull trout core area.

Bigfork Dam operation has little direct influence on habitat occupied by bull trout. Fish are known to enter the diversion canal and may become trapped when flows are reduced during maintenance activities. PacifiCorp, the current owner of Bigfork Dam, alerts the Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks before total dewatering of the canal so that fish can be captured and moved back into the river. The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission license for the dam expires in 2002, and the review process for relicensing is underway.

Although Bigfork Dam has eliminated connectivity of the Swan River drainage with the Flathead River drainage, the remainder of the Swan River drainage upstream of Flathead Lake remains intact. A large number of license applications for small hydropower projects in the Swan River drainage during the early 1980's stimulated a major study of their potential effects on fisheries. Had the construction of the 20 proposed microhydro projects proceeded, the estimated total losses of juvenile bull trout was calculated to be 11 to 84 percent in individual streams, or 1 to 8 percent of the drainagewide migratory bull trout production (Leathe and Enk 1985). Although none of the proposed projects has been built to date, future activity may occur at these sites.

Kerr Dam, constructed downstream of the natural outlet of Flathead Lake in 1938, blocked upstream fish passage from the lower Flathead River into Flathead Lake. In early biological surveys, surveyors noted that the falls downstream of Flathead Lake were not fish barriers but "... consist simply of a series of rapids, which do not interfere in the least with the free movement of fish. From this point down Flathead river possesses no falls or obstructions of any kind, and there is none in Clarke Fork until near Lake Pend d'Oreille" (Gilbert and Evermann 1895).

However, because of thermal conditions, routine bull trout migration probably did not occur historically between large lakes, such as Flathead Lake and upstream or downstream lakes. Bull trout are believed to be deterred from migrating upstream into relatively warm effluent waters from lakes during the fall. To date, only casual observation and genetic information support this hypothesis, but research with radio transmitters should be invaluable in further defining these migratory patterns. Regardless, historical habitat connectivity between lakes, which facilitated straying of fish, may have been important for providing genetic exchange and reestablishing

extirpated populations. Downstream movement of fish through Kerr Dam, into the lower Flathead River, has been demonstrated.

Kerr Dam has substantially modified the hydrograph of Flathead Lake, resulting in a longer full pool period in the summer months followed by a more rapid drawdown in winter. This water level scenario has impacted fisheries in the lake, in part by increasing shoreline erosion, both in the lake and in the lower end of the mainstem Flathead River where it enters the lake.

Hungry Horse Dam, completed in 1953, disconnected the South Fork Flathead River drainage from the main Flathead River system. The full ramifications of this loss to Flathead Lake, as well as to the South Fork Flathead River drainage, are not currently known. Preliminary genetic information suggests that, to a great extent, local bull trout populations using the three forks of the Flathead River segregated themselves naturally (Kanda *et al.* 1994). Therefore, the genetic diversity of Flathead Lake bull trout may have been reduced as a result of the dam construction. The bull trout core areas remaining upstream of the dam (Hungry Horse, Big Salmon, and Doctor Lakes) probably preserved the genes of South Fork Flathead River stocks that existed there historically, though some adaptive changes could occur. Hungry Horse Dam has benefitted the South Fork Flathead River in one way, creating an isolation barrier that has kept most of the South Fork Flathead River drainage free from nonnative fish species.

During recent decades, operation of Hungry Horse Dam has resulted in excessive drawdowns. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks has recommended a maximum drawdown of 26 meters (85 feet) based on biological considerations. Since 1988, this recommendation has been frequently exceeded, as the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation released water as required to meet the Pacific Northwest Coordinated Agreements for critical water years. Research has shown that reduced reservoir volume directly impacts the size of the aquatic environment for all organisms in the food web. Production of phytoplankton, zooplankton, and aquatic insects is reduced. And reduction in the food base reduces the prey available for predator species like bull trout. Reservoir volume can also be greatly reduced, forcing bull trout and other fish species into riverine habitats. Because of the steep slopes in the reservoir, volume is reduced by approximately 80 percent for drawdowns of 55 meters (180 feet). Biologists at the Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks are concerned that some local bull trout populations in Hungry Horse

Reservoir may be damaged by continuing deep drawdowns (MFWP 1997a), though to date the overall population appears to have been stable.

Downstream of Hungry Horse Dam, summer releases of cold water may have historically impacted the behavioral patterns and food resources of native bull trout and cutthroat, as well as influenced behavior and distribution of lake trout that invaded the lower river in substantial numbers, beginning in the late 1980's. However, there is limited documentation on the nature of these complex interactions. In 1996, a selective withdrawal system was installed on Hungry Horse Dam. This selective withdrawal system now allows water to be drawn from different levels of the reservoir, allowing for some control of downstream water temperatures and a more natural thermal regime in the summer.

The December 2000 Biological Opinion contained reasonable and prudent measures for operations of Hungry Horse Dam (USFWS 2000): "[i]mplement operational measures at Hungry Horse Dam intended to minimize adverse effects of rapid and severe flow fluctuations on bull trout, including year-round minimum flows and ramping rates, and seasonal water management; conduct studies to monitor the adequacy of the constraints; and provide for modification of the operational constraints depending on study results. "

The Biological Opinion includes specific flow targets and ramping rates and mandates implementation of the VARQ (or variable flood control) operations to better balance reservoir refill and downstream flow regimes to benefit bull trout and other native fishes (USFWS 2000).

Priest Recovery Subunit

The outlet control structure at the mouth of Priest Lake was constructed in 1951 by the State of Idaho and rebuilt in 1978 (PBTTAT 1998b). It is currently operated and maintained by the Avista Corporation under contract with the Idaho Department of Water Resources. The purpose of the dam is to hold up the summer water level in Priest Lake and the Thorofare for recreation. It is probably a fish barrier (upstream) during the time that it operates. Water release during the fall supplements downstream hydropower production. In winter, the dam's boards are removed; then there is free flow, and fish

passage is not obstructed. The effects of this dam on bull trout in the Priest River system are not currently well understood.

Summary (Dams)

Dams have been one of the most important factors in fragmenting and likely reducing the bull trout population of the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. Large hydroelectric dams permanently interrupted established bull trout migration routes, eliminating access from major portions of the tributary system to the productive waters of Lake Pend Oreille and Flathead Lake. Also, these dams impact the habitat that was left behind by affecting reservoir and lake levels, water temperature, and water quality. Smaller irrigation storage dams have further fragmented some of the previously connected watersheds and made it increasingly difficult for migratory bull trout to thrive. In some locations, most notably in the Swan, Hungry Horse, and Painted Rocks core areas, dams formed isolation barriers that have prevented the movement of nonnative fish.

Forestry Management Practices

Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

Past forestry practices (road construction, log skidding, harvest in riparian areas, clear-cutting, and terracing) were often damaging to watershed conditions and were major contributing causes of bull trout decline (USFWS 1998). The effects of thesepractices included increased sediment in streams, increased peak flows, thermal modifications, loss of instream woody cover, and channel instability.

In the late 19th and early 20th centuries, mining activity and railroad construction resulted in vast amounts of timber being cut from what was to become the Deerlodge National Forest, in the upper Clark Fork River drainage. Between 1880 and 1918, approximately 50 million board feet were harvested annually from lands surrounding Butte, Montana (MBTSG 1995e, Periman 1994).

The crudely designed road system and skid trails from this era had lingering effects in some areas. In addition, a number of roads were built for other purposes, such as recreation and access to mining claims and private lands. Some of these roads need rehabilitation. Impacts from roads can include high sediment loads, channelization, and valley bottom restriction, resulting in loss of stream pool habitat and loss of riparian

vegetation. Separating the effects of logging roads from those of roads built for, or eventually used for, other purposes is difficult or impossible. Most of the major access roads across National Forest lands were initially built as logging roads.

On the Lolo and Deerlodge National Forests, percent surface fines (a measure of fine sediment) in streams is positively correlated to, among other variables, road densities (Kramer *et al.* 1991). Amounts of fine sediment measured in relatively undeveloped watersheds on the Lolo and Deerlodge Forests appear to be roughly half of those measured in managed watersheds on the same forests (Kramer *et al.* 1994). In the Swan River drainage, bull trout redd counts in spawning tributary watersheds were shown to be negatively correlated with the density of logging roads (Baxter *et al.* 1999).

Log drives down the Blackfoot and Clearwater Rivers had an unquantifiable, but significant, impact on aquatic habitat (MBTSG 1995b). Evermann (1901) wrote of the Blackfoot River:

> "At Bonner, a mile or so above the mouth, is a very large sawmill, and the river for 3 or 4 miles above the mill is literally filled with logs which have been cut from the heavily timbered country through which the river flows and which were being floated down to the mill. . . . The mountains on either side are of highly metamorphic sandstone, and in most places densely timbered, but at the present rate of destruction it will not be many years until these magnificent forests are wholly destroyed, the mountains made barren, and the volume and beauty of the streams greatly diminished."

Evermann (1901) also wrote about Rattlesnake Creek near Missoula (MBTSG 1996e):

> "The banks are lined with a heavy growth of trees, bushes, and vines, but this promises not to remain very much longer. The larger timber is being cut off rapidly for wood, which is floated down the stream. At the time of our visit, at least 3 miles of the stream was literally filled with an immense jam of cordwood which had been started down, and above this we saw a constant line of sticks floating by to augment the large amount already in the jam. From the best information we could gain, all of this timber is being cut from Government land, and, whether by Government permission or not, it is certainly to be very greatly deplored."

The Clark Fork River and Fish Creek were also used for log drives. Log drives were very damaging to fish and fish habitat at the time they occurred (MBTSG 1996e). Some of the impacts to the stream channel (eroded streambed, gouged banks, straightened channel, blocked side channels, and lost instream cover and woody debris) no doubt persist into the present (Sedell *et al.* 1991). Guth and Cohen (1991), in a caption for a photograph of a log jam at Bonner in 1899, state that sometimes logs being floated down river did not behave and that there were tremendous log jams. Dynamite was usually used to break up the logs that formed a jam, with predictable consequences to bull trout.

Many drainages in the Blackfoot River watershed have been extensively logged and have suffered damage from sedimentation. Silvicultural impairment to water quality has been noted in Belmont, Bear, Chamberlain, Deer, Dunham, Keno, Marcum, McElwain, and Richmond Creeks and in the North Fork Blackfoot and West Fork Clearwater Rivers (MDHES 1994). Pierce and Podner (2000) identify potential restoration projects, including improvements to road crossings and restoration of habitat related to impacts from forestry, on 64 streams or stream reaches throughout the Blackfoot River drainage.

Current forestry practices are more progressive, but the risk to bull trout recovery is still high because of the existing road systems and the lingering results of past activities. The Bitterroot National Forest has classified the condition of most watersheds on the forest into three categories: high risk, sensitive, and healthy. These categories are based on two major effects of management on watershed health: first, sediment yields from road construction and, second, increased water yields and peak flows from timber harvesting (Decker 1991). An analysis of the condition of the Bitterroot National Forest streams indicates that about one-third of the streams within the timber base are in healthy condition, one-third are in sensitive condition, and one-third are in high risk condition. Validation studies have found this model to be accurate 80 percent of the time. When the model is not accurate, the streams are usually in worse condition than predicted (Bitterroot National Forest 1991, 1992). On the Bitterroot National Forest, local bull trout populations with estimable numbers of individuals (10 or more fish larger than 12.7 centimeters per 305 meters; *i.e.*, number greater than 5 inches per 1,000 feet of stream) have been found only in drainages classified as healthy or sensitive. In the high risk

drainages, no bull trout have been found at 80 percent of the sites, and the other 20 percent contain very low numbers of bull trout (Clancy 1993).

Studies conducted on the Bitterroot National Forest have found that, based on population estimates, bull trout numbers are negatively correlated with the amount of fine sediment found in the stream (Clancy 1993; MBTSG 1995a). Weaver and Fraley (1993) found that the higher the percentage of the spawning substrate that is less than 0.6 centimeter (0.25 inch) in diameter, the lower the survival to emergence for embryos and fry of bull trout and westslope cutthroat trout. They also found evidence linking disturbance patterns in the preceding 10 years to sediment and water yield. McNeil core samples taken on the Bitterroot National Forest indicated a high average proportion of fine sediment (38 to 41 percent less than 0.6 centimeter) in both developed and undeveloped drainages (Clancy 1991), in large part due to the underlying granitic geological formations. Wolman pebble counts (an alternative method of analysis) in undeveloped watersheds in the Bitterroot National Forest generally indicated less than 25 percent fine sediment that was less than 0.6 centimeter (0.25 inch) in diameter (Decker *et al*. 1993).

Numerous streams are listed as having impaired water quality as a result of silvicultural activities in the middle portion of the Clark Fork River drainage (MDHES 1994). Studying fisheries habitat on the Lolo and Deerlodge National Forests, Kramer *et al.* (1991) found that percent of surface fines in streams is correlated to, among other variables, road densities. Amounts of fine sediment in relatively undeveloped watersheds on the Lolo and Deerlodge Forests appear to be roughly half of those measured in managed watersheds on the same forests (Kramer *et al.* 1994).

Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

The Thompson River has a main logging haul road along one side of the stream and a county road along the other side of the stream for nearly its entire length. Many other streams have logging roads in the riparian zone.

Silviculture has been identified as a source of impaired water quality within the lower Clark Fork River drainage of Montana in Noxon Reservoir, Beaver, Elk, Fish Trap, Graves, Marten, Pilgrim, Prospect, Snake, and Swamp Creeks and in the Middle Fork Bull, Thompson, and Vermillion Rivers, to name some of the major drainages (MDHES

1994). Bull trout in Prospect Creek, the Vermillion River, and the Bull River (all considered local populations of bull trout) have been particularly impacted by past logging activities (Pratt and Huston 1993). Deposited sediment levels in the Bull River and Rock Creek are high enough to significantly reduce bull trout survival to emergence (Huston 1988; Smith 1993). While some of these streams do not currently contain bull trout, they are contributing waters and may prove important in recovery.

A number of stream segments within the Lake Pend Oreille Key Watershed in Idaho are also listed as water quality limited (PBTTAT 1998a). Lightning, East Fork Lightning, Porcupine, Wellington, Grouse, North Fork Grouse, Gold, Granite, Trestle, Cocolalla, and Hoodoo Creeks and the Clark Fork and Pack Rivers are all listed for various "pollutants of concern," including sediment, flow, habitat alteration, thermal modification, metals, and others. Many of these problems are related to past forestry practices.

In both Montana and Idaho, forest managers and regulators have recognized the potential impacts of forest management and have designed practices and rules (such as the Idaho Forest Practices Act and the Montana Streamside Management Zone Law; see Montana Department of State Lands [MDSL 1994]) to reduce impacts resulting from new operations. Best management practices include requiring "leave trees" in riparian areas, prohibiting use of equipment in or near streams, and controlling erosion from roads, trails, and landings.

Unique, unstable, or previously impacted areas may require best management practices that exceed Forest Practices Act minimum standards, up to and including no activity. The current minimum leave tree requirements in the Idaho Forest Practices Act may not adequately protect water temperatures in all cases (PBTTAT 1998a). Forest Practices Act minimum standards may also not be adequate to maintain recruitment of large woody debris. The Panhandle Bull Trout Technical Advisory Team (PBTTAT 1998a) cited Zaroban *et al.* (1997) as finding that forest practices rules were implemented 97 percent of the time in Idaho and that, when applied, they were 99 percent effective at preventing pollutants from reaching a stream. However, half the timber sales reviewed were still delivering sediment to streams. The impact of this sediment delivery was not assessed. These findings, updated recently by Hoelscher *et al.* (2001), illustrate the need to fully implement all applicable rules to prevent misapplication of any one rule from

delivering sediment to a stream. Federal land management agencies have adopted management guidelines (Inland Native Fish Strategy [or INFISH]) that exceed Idaho and Montana rules and that were designed to protect native fish populations. Impacts from previous forest activities (legacy effects) may limit current management options.

In lower reaches of Trestle Creek, large cedars have been removed from the stream riparian zone, reducing cover, shade, and recruitment of large woody debris (PBTTAT 1998a). Several small headwater streams on National Forest land were harvested, causing some localized stream channel downcutting and loss of some habitat complexity. Timber harvest on private lands still occurs, but is regulated by site-specific best management practices developed in 1994 by the Trestle Creek Local Working Committee.

Approximately 16 percent of the Granite Creek watershed has been harvested (PBTTAT 1998a). Modeling of flow responses to timber harvest suggests that the Granite Creek drainage is at moderate risk for increased peak flows. Past heavy timber harvesting in riparian areas and in some headwater areas has resulted in downcutting in several headwater reaches and accumulation of excess bedload material in downstream reaches.

Compared with other Pend Oreille watersheds, Lightning Creek has been logged extensively. Over 35 percent of the entire watershed has had timber harvest activity. Poor harvest practices in the past have led to severe bank, bed, and channel instability along most of the mainstem. Bedload deposition, peak flows, stream temperature, and intermittency are exacerbated problems in the Lightning Creek drainage. Lightning Creek (from Quartz Creek to its confluence with the Clark Fork River) is currently listed as a section 303(d) water body, not fully supporting beneficial uses. The listed pollutants of concern are sediment load, flow, and habitat alteration (PBTTAT 1998a). Bull trout redd counts in Lightning Creek have also exhibited a steady decline over the past 20 years (LPOWAG 1999).

The current impaired habitat condition in Grouse Creek is a function of early logging (USDA 1993) and natural geology. In the 1920's, Humbird Lumber Company constructed a logging railroad along the creek to provide easy access for harvesting large cedar and white pine trees in the drainage. By 1934, roughly 70 percent of the main

Grouse Creek drainage had been cleared and/or burned. Much of the mainstem of Grouse Creek (84 percent), including much of the land owned by Humbird, is now National Forest land (USDA 1993). Fifty-four percent of the land in the North Fork Grouse Creek drainage is in private (CPI Forest Products) or State (Idaho) ownership and is contained mostly in large tracts of land in the headwaters. In the lower reaches of North Fork Grouse Creek, much of the stream riparian zone is privately owned, either by individual homeowners or by CPI Forest Products.

In the East River, the only drainage in the lower Priest River watershed with a known bull trout population, 25 percent of the watershed has highly erodible soil types, and 41 percent is in the rain-on-snow sensitive zone. Road densities are high, averaging 5.1 kilometers per square kilometer (2.0 miles per square mile), and there are 2.2 road crossings per kilometer (1.4 road crossings per mile) of stream. The percentage of the watershed that has been logged is high, but has not been quantified (PBTTAT 1998b).

Flathead Recovery Subunit

Past forestry practices (road construction, log skidding, riparian tree harvest, clear-cutting, and splash dams) are also a major contributing cause of the decline of bull trout in the Flathead River drainage. The effects on habitat of these practices include increased sediment in streams, increased peak flows, hydrograph and thermal modifications, loss of instream woody debris and channel stability, and increased accessibility for anglers and poachers. Although the heaviest timber harvest occurred in the 1960's and 1970's, past forest practices will continue to impact bull trout because of the remaining road systems, increased water yields, and increased efficiency of water delivery to the streams that results in changes in the runoff timing. Impaired water quality as a result of silvicultural activities has been identified in 325 kilometers (202 miles) of 17 streams in the Flathead River drainage (MDHES 1994).

Extensive logging and road construction began in the Swan River drainage in the early 1950's (MBTSG 1996b). These activities, conducted on private and on State- and federally owned lands, progressively penetrated nearly all major tributary drainages up to the Bob Marshall and Mission Mountains Wilderness boundaries. The extent of timber harvest and road development varies considerably within and between ownerships in the Swan River drainage. The U.S. Forest Service and the Montana Department of Natural Resources and Conservation estimate that 20 percent and 27 percent of their lands,

respectively, have had some degree of timber harvest activity. Plum Creek Timber Company estimates that approximately 70 percent of its land has had some degree of harvest activity.

Riparian and adjacent timber harvest have affected stream channel and streambank cover, stability, and integrity in the Swan River. The Montana Department of Health and Environmental Sciences reports that 79 kilometers (49 miles) of six streams in the Swan River drainage suffer impaired water quality as a result of silvicultural activities (MDHES 1994).

In Swan River basin streams, monitoring of spawning and incubation habitat quality in major spawning tributaries suggests that there are relatively high sediment levels, even under natural conditions (MBTSG 1996b). Slight sediment increases may adversely impact survival of bull trout fry to emergence (Weaver and Fraley 1993). However, in the Swan River drainage, natural variation in sediment levels occurs between streams, largely because of geological and geomorphic differences, and this variation complicates analysis of the effects of human activities on sediment in streams (MBTSG 1996b).

Research conducted by Plum Creek Timber Company suggests that bull trout spawning and distribution in the Swan River is primarily a function of geomorphology and patch size. Bull trout occur mainly in the larger watersheds, that is, those over 2,000 hectares (5,000 acres) (Rieman and McIntyre 1995; Watson and Hillman 1997). Preliminary investigations comparing bull trout spawning locations to riparian land types suggest that bull trout tend to spawn in locations exhibiting specific riparian land types and that the degree of spawning in any tributary may be directly related to availability of specific land types (Watson and Hillman 1997).

Another analysis indicates that Swan River tributaries draining large areas of roadless lands are disproportionally important for the persistence and recovery of westslope cutthroat trout, bull trout, and amphibians (Frissell *et al.* 1995). Road density in other drainages is highly correlated with the proportion of a watershed that has been logged (Hauer and Blum 1991). Baxter *et al.* (1999) found that changes in bull trout redd numbers with time in Swan River tributary streams (1980's and 1990's, as reported by Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks) was negatively correlated with road density, and they

suggested that prior land use (primarily logging and associated road building) may have negatively affected bull trout populations. Frissell *et al.* (1995) and Trombulak and Frissell (2000) also state that habitat deterioration and the introduction of nonnative fishes that threaten native aquatic biota are both associated with roads and the wide range of human activities that roads encourage or allow.

Research by Butler *et al.* (1995) and Spencer (1991a) indicates that a seasonal deficit in dissolved oxygen has occurred in the deeper portions of Swan Lake in recent years, a phenomenon not observed in earlier surveys. Stable isotope analysis was used to trace the source of the oxygen deficit to input of organic carbon from the Swan River into the lake during spring runoff and further suggested that recently logged tributaries are one important source of organic carbon (Butler *et al.* 1995). Given the potential consequences to bull trout habitat, this phenomenon clearly merits close monitoring and further investigation.

Timber harvest in the South Fork Flathead River began during the 1950's and will probably continue into the future (MBTSG 1995d). Differences are obvious when managed lands are compared with the Wilderness Area upstream. Managed lands present higher risk to bull trout, but the percentage of these lands is a relatively small portion of the entire South Fork Flathead River drainage.

Many problems result from road systems around Hungry Horse Reservoir (MBTSG 1995d). Logging access roads up most of the major tributaries on the managed lands are located in the riparian zone. Streams have been impacted by increased water yields from timber harvest and old road systems (Weaver 1993). The U.S. Forest Service and Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks are constantly evaluating roads, and improvements are being proposed and implemented.

Priest Recovery Subunit

Approximately half of the Upper Priest Lake drainage basin has soil types that are classified as highly erodible, ranging from 15 percent in the Lime Creek drainage to 86 percent in the Rock Creek drainage (PBTTAT 1998b). Half or more of many of the watersheds lie in the rain-on-snow sensitive zone, making them prone to flashy runoff patterns. These characteristics predispose portions of the watershed to habitat degradation when ground-disturbing activities occur. East-side streams are higher

gradient, are bedrock controlled, and generally transport fine sediment through their systems. West-side streams are lower gradient and have a greater accumulation of fine sediment. These characteristics are of special concern because the Upper Priest Lake watershed is the most intact habitat remaining for bull trout in the Priest River basin.

In the Lime Creek subwatershed, portions of the Hughes Fork and Trapper Creek have high road densities, exceeding 3.5 kilometers per square kilometer (1.4 miles per square mile) of land, with many of the roads constructed in the riparian zone (PBTTAT 1998b). Lime Creek has 2.2 road crossings per kilometer (1.4 road crossings per mile) of stream, and several other drainages exceed 0.8 crossings per kilometer (0.5 crossings per mile). Logging has occurred in 5 percent of the Upper Priest River watershed, 18 percent of the Hughes Fork, and 55 percent of Trapper Creek (PBTTAT 1998b). Logging in the Trapper Creek drainage in the 1990's was conducted under site-specific best management practices, with primary emphasis on reducing any contribution of fine sediment to stream channels.

In tributaries draining directly into Priest Lake, the portion of the watershed having highly erodible soils ranges from 10 to 30 percent, with half or more of most watersheds in the rain-on-snow sensitive zone (PBTTAT 1998b). Road densities tend to be lower (less than 3.0 kilometers per square kilometer [1.2 miles per square mile]) in the watersheds where bull trout spawning and rearing still occur (Caribou, Lion, Two Mouth, Indian, and Granite Creeks). Major portions of many watersheds have been logged, including 23 percent of Caribou Creek, 35 percent of Lion Creek, 52 percent of Two Mouth Creek, 36 percent of Indian Creek, and 75 percent of Soldier Creek (PBTTAT 1998a).

Five stream segments within the Priest Lake basin were listed as water quality limited segments on Idaho's 1996 section 303(d) list under the Clean Water Act, including Kalispell, Reeder, Tango, Trapper, and Two Mouth Creeks (PBTTAT 1998b). Streams listed are considered as not fully supporting designated or existing beneficial uses. Many streams in the basin fail to meet temperature standards for salmonid spawning and specific temperature criteria for bull trout protection. The State is currently in the process of determining beneficial uses and support status for water bodies throughout the basin.

Riparian logging historically removed stands of mature cedar in some Priest River drainages. These cedars have often been replaced by early successional species, such as alder in thickets, resulting in decreased recruitment of large woody debris to the stream channels, reduced shading, and lower quality habitat for bull trout. In addition, the Sundance fire, started by accident from a slash burn, burned much of the east side of the drainage.

Culverts on forest roads have been identified as potential fish passage impediments and are found on Hughes Fork, Gold Creek, Granite Creek, South Fork Granite Creek, Kalispell Creek, and the Middle Fork East River (PBTTAT 1998b).

Summary (Forestry Management Practices)

For over 100 years, forestry practices have caused major impacts to bull trout habitat throughout the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. And because forestry is the primary landscape activity in the basin, the impacts have been widespread. Primary effects of timber harvest, such as road construction, log skidding, riparian tree harvest, clear-cutting, splash dams, and others, have been reduced by the more recent development of more progressive practices. However, the legacy effects of the past century have included lasting impacts to bull trout habitat, including increased sediment in streams, increased peak flows, hydrograph and thermal modifications, loss of instream woody debris and of channel stability, and increased accessibility for anglers and poachers. These impacts will continue and are irreversible in some drainages. In addition, insufficient funding to maintain the existing road system has resulted in maintenance deficiencies, even on some well-designed roads. Consequently, impacts of the existing road system are compounded.

Livestock Grazing

Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

The first cattle in this recovery subunit were brought to the Deer Lodge Valley in the 1850's. By the early 1860's, thousands of cattle were grazing in the Deer Lodge and Flint Creek Valleys. Rangelands in the 1880's were commonly overstocked and overgrazed (Periman 1994).

Grazing, both current and historical, causes a major impact on fisheries in some portions of the upper Clark Fork River basin (MBTSG 1995e). Grazing directly affects streams by reducing bank stability and riparian vegetation. These reductions, in turn, increase sediment loads and water temperatures and reduce instream water quality.

Historical grazing use of the Blackfoot River drainage may have been significant in causing the decline of bull trout. Grazing impacts have decreased in recent years as a result of cooperative efforts between landowners and agencies, but that effort needs to continue. Pierce and Podner (2000) identified 30 streams or stream reaches in the Blackfoot River watershed that are still impacted by grazing practices or cattle feedlots that need to be improved.

Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

Some isolated areas in this recovery subunit have been impacted by grazing (particularly in the lower Flathead River portion of the drainage, Thompson River, Elk Creek, Pilgrim Creek, and portions of the Bull River), but overall grazing is not one of the high risk factors (MBTSG 1996a).

Livestock grazing occurs in the Lake Pend Oreille basin but is not prevalent. Following the 1910 fires, sheep grazing was a common use of uplands, but is no longer significant (PBTTAT 1998a). Some negative impacts from livestock are occurring in the lower Priest River and in portions of the mainstem of the East River (Rothrock 2000).

Use of land for agriculture has been ongoing for many years in the Pack River drainage (PBTTAT 1998a). Grazing occurs in the lower two-thirds of the watershed. Much of the Pack River is considered open range. Crop production occurs in the watershed from below the Highway 95 bridge downstream. Large cedar trees and riparian vegetation were removed years ago. Impacts to the stream channel in lower reaches have occurred over a long period of time and continue to be a factor today in degrading habitat condition and decreasing complexity.

Effects of livestock grazing on bull trout recruitment are a significant threat in Twin Creek, a mainstem Clark Fork River tributary just upstream of Lake Pend Oreille (PBTTAT 1998a). In the early 1960's, the lower reach of Twin Creek was channelized, significantly reducing stream length and creating a reach with high width-to-depth ratios

and poor habitat. The channel has not recovered, and grazing has continued to negatively impact the stream and riparian area until recently. A restoration project is now underway.

Flathead Recovery Subunit

The overall risk to bull trout from livestock grazing in this area is low (MBTSG 1995c). There are only a limited number of public allotments, and most of the privately grazed livestock is on the valley floor, where spawning and rearing seldom occur. The Stillwater and Whitefish River watersheds are most heavily affected.

Livestock grazing also occurs near the Swan River and the lower portions of some important tributary drainages (MBTSG 1996b). There is some risk to bull trout, but, at present, grazing is not considered to be a significant factor for bull trout conservation in this drainage.

No grazing occurs in the South Fork Flathead River drainage above Hungry Horse Dam, except for stock used by outfitters and recreationists (MBTSG 1995d). In some instances, recreational stock grazing does impact water quality and streambank stability. The trail system in the wilderness is extensive, and grazing problems are created in areas of high use.

Priest Recovery Subunit

Livestock grazing is not a major problem in the Priest River basin, especially in the watersheds where bull trout spawning and rearing occur (PBTTAT 1998b).

Summary (Livestock Grazing)

Livestock grazing is most widespread and has had the greatest impact to bull trout in the upper portion of the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. Grazing is of particular concern where allotments are located along spawning and rearing streams. While severe site-specific problems may occur, livestock impacts are generally being reduced through better management practices on public and, to a lesser extent, private lands. Livestock grazing does not represent a major threat to bull trout recovery in this recovery unit, but where problems exist, they can be severe.

Agricultural Practices

Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

Impacts to bull trout from agriculture include dewatering, irrigation entrainment, reduced water quality, loss of riparian habitat, and increased water temperature. Water diversions significantly threaten the restoration of bull trout in many portions of the upper Clark Fork River drainage (MBTSG 1995e). Diversions may make fish migration upstream impossible unless passage has been incorporated or added to the design, and downstream migrants may be pulled through unscreened irrigation diversions (entrained) and displaced from stream habitat into ditches where they become lost to the system. In addition, many diversions are simply bulldozed gravel dikes that are frequently a major source of stream instability, leading to bank erosion and channel degradation. Diversions are a particular problem in the Little Blackfoot River drainage, in the upper portions of the Clark Fork River drainage, in the Flint Creek drainage, and in the Bitterroot River drainage (MBTSG 1995a 1995e). The Rock Creek drainage contains relatively few diversions. In both Rock Creek and the Blackfoot River drainage, numerous diversion structures have been renovated to provide fish passage and eliminate entrainment (Pierce and Podner 2000). However, more work needs to be done.

Agriculture also impacts bull trout when farming practices encroach on riparian zones. Such encroachment is a widespread problem in the upper Clark Fork River basin (MBTSG 1995e). Loss of riparian vegetation can result in bank destabilization, warmer water temperatures, and increased sediment loads, among other problems. Agriculture can also impact water quality though increased nutrients. For example, feedlots are known to negatively impact water quality. In some areas of the Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit, streams have been channelized for agricultural purposes.

Poor water quality, poor habitat, and depressed fisheries in Nevada Creek and, to some degree, the Blackfoot River below Nevada Creek can be attributed to agricultural practices in the Nevada and Ovando Valleys (MBTSG 1995b). Alteration of stream flows below Nevada Creek Reservoir, including dewatering of the stream channel, has negatively impacted the fishery. Irrigation return flows add excessive amounts of nutrients and sediment and increase water temperatures (Pierce and Peters 1990). McGuire (1991) found evidence of persistent nonpoint source pollution (nutrient enrichment, sedimentation, and elevated water temperatures) in the Blackfoot River

below the confluence of Nevada Creek. Despite substantial progress in this area, irrigation impacts and instream flow problems continue to plague 23 streams or stream reaches in the Blackfoot River watershed (Pierce and Podner 2000).

Seasonally, there are diversion barriers on the upper mainstem Clark Fork River and a large diversion on Warm Springs Creek. Most of the diversions in the upper basin are at least seasonal barriers to fish passage (MBTSG 1995e).

The Upper Clark Fork River drainage contains approximately 626 kilometers (389 miles) of chronically dewatered streams and 14 kilometers (9 miles) of periodically dewatered streams (MFWP 1991). Most of the water diverted from streams for irrigation in this basin is used for raising feed for cattle. Water is diverted from streams to irrigate over 40,500 hectares (100,000 acres) of land upstream of Turah (USGS 1993). Only a handful of the tributary streams located upstream of Rock Creek contain surface flow on a year-round basis. Some other tributary streams contain only warm irrigation return flows in late summer. Flint Creek, the Little Blackfoot River, and the Clark Fork River are among the most impacted (MBTSG 1995e).

Most of the large tributary streams on both sides of the Bitterroot Valley north of Darby are heavily diverted. Some diversions that may be barriers to fish passage also occur on the mainstem Bitterroot River. Approximately 104 kilometers (65 miles) of rivers and streams are estimated to suffer from chronic dewatering in the Bitterroot River drainage (MBTSG 1995a), including North and South Bear Creeks, Big Creek, the Bitterroot River from Corvallis to Stevensville, and Blodgett, Burnt Fork, Carlton, Kootenai, Lolo, Lost Horse, Mill (tributary to Lolo Creek), O'Brien, Rock, Skalkaho, South Fork Lolo, Sweathouse, Sweeney, and Tin Cup Creeks (MFWP 1991).

Dewatering of streams restricts the distribution and movement of bull trout in tributary streams and is probably one of the primary causes for the decline of migratory bull trout from the mainstem Bitterroot River (Nelson 1999). Dewatering also contributes to thermal problems in the tributaries and the mainstem river. Dewatered areas are a barrier, and the complexity of diversions and over-appropriation of water in the Bitterroot Valley severely complicate the potential for restoring bull trout (MBTSG 1995a).

Agricultural impacts to water quality have been noted in 311 kilometers (193 miles) of tributary streams to the Blackfoot River (MDHES 1994). Chronic dewatering is found in 133 kilometers (82.4 miles) of 18 streams within the Blackfoot River drainage (MFWP 1991).

Passage at an irrigation diversion on Dry Creek, a Clark Fork River tributary near Superior, is currently blocked. The entire reach of stream below the diversion goes dry during the irrigation season (MBTSG 1996e). This condition effectively eliminates any potential for spawning and rearing in Dry Creek. In nearby drainages, such as Fish and Cedar Creeks, some lower stream reaches dry up seasonally. However, during the spring runoff, migratory bull trout move upstream into the perennial reaches and survive there to spawn later in the fall. If the Dry Creek irrigation dam were improved to allow fish passage, the potential exists for migratory bull trout spawning and rearing.

Rieman and McIntyre (1993) concluded that temperature is a critical habitat characteristic for bull trout. Temperatures in excess of 15 degrees Celsius (59 degrees Fahrenheit) are thought to limit bull trout distribution in many systems (Fraley and Shepard 1989; Brown 1992). The causes of the thermal problems include dewatering, lack of riparian vegetation to shade the water, and warm irrigation return flows entering tributary streams and the main river.

The upper mainstem Clark Fork River has elevated water temperatures considered detrimental to bull trout from about Perkins Lane Bridge downstream (MBTSG 1995e). For the 92-day period from June through August 1992, water temperatures exceeded 20 degrees Celsius (68 degrees Fahrenheit) on 61, 36, 49, and 35 days near Warm Springs Creek, Deerlodge, Gold Creek, and Turah, respectively. The maximum temperature was over 25 degrees Celsius (77 degrees Fahrenheit) near Warm Springs Creek, Gold Creek, and Turah (USGS 1993). Long reaches of the river between major tributaries exceed the preference range of bull trout because only a few of the major tributaries maintain sufficient flow of cold water in summer to have a cooling effect on the river. Most of these colder tributaries are located from Rock Creek downstream. How much of this condition is natural is unknown, but land and water use have probably exacerbated the natural condition.

was considered a major fisheries problem in the Flathead River portion of the drainage. In 1985, the Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes were able to establish instream flows on streams that are impacted by the Flathead Agency Irrigation District. Although stream dewatering is no longer a major problem in this portion of the drainage, agricultural impacts to water quality remain.

The Flathead Agency Irrigation District, which was constructed beginning about 1910, broke the connection between many of the tributary streams and the lower Flathead River (MBTSG 1996e). Many tributary streams also contain dams, including Crow, Mission, Post, and Dry Creeks. All of these streams, except Crow Creek, are known to have been historical bull trout spawning and rearing streams. The impacts of these tributary dams vary depending on the situation. Some have blocked migratory fish from spawning tributaries, and some have created isolated local populations of bull trout. Each case is unique, and the effects should be evaluated on a case-by-case basis. In total, construction of irrigation diversions, canals, and dams on the tributaries eliminated access to more than 100 kilometers (62 miles) of tributary spawning and rearing habitat in the lower Flathead River watershed (Cross and DosSantos 1988), though some of the watershed may have been unoccupied by bull trout because of natural conditions.

In the lower Flathead River drainage, three irrigation storage reservoirs are now considered to hold isolated fragments of the local bull trout population(s) that once occupied the Mission Creek drainage. Tabor Reservoir (St. Marys Lake) is an irrigation storage facility (approximately 111 surface hectares [274 surface acres] when full); its spawning and rearing habitat is compromised because the only tributary stream (Dry Lake Creek) is completely flooded at full pool and mostly inaccessible due to gradient barriers at minimum pool (MBTSG 1996e). Spawning can only occur when there are suitable lake water levels to inundate passage barriers while still exposing an adequate length of stream. Rearing habitat becomes lentic (without current) during late spring and summer because the entire accessible portion of the stream is inundated at full pool. The lack of spawning and rearing habitat raise concerns about the long-term viability of this local population (Hansen and DosSantos 1993a). Water enters the system from the Upper Jocko canal and may translocate some bull trout from that system. Appropriate dam operations are vital for continued successful reproduction in this local population. The outflow waters are transported through the Dry Creek irrigation ditch system and no

longer have a functional connection to Mission Creek. Reconnection of this fragmented population to its historical source (Mission Creek) is unlikely.

In Mission Reservoir (approximately 117 hectares [289 acres] when full), another small natural lake (terminal glacial moraine) that was dammed, the lake environment is a limiting component of bull trout habitat due to extreme drawdowns for irrigation (Hansen and DosSantos 1993b). The greatest risks to bull trout in this system are hybridization with brook trout, washout of adult fish through the dam, overwinter stress from deficiencies in reservoir habitat, and illegal harvesting (Hansen and DosSantos 1993b). A higher minimum pool was recently negotiated in Mission Reservoir, but further research is necessary to determine the extent that drawdown affects the bull trout in this local population (MBTSG 1996e).

McDonald Reservoir (approximately 100 hectares [250 acres] when full) on Post Creek, a Mission Creek tributary, is also used for irrigation storage. It supports a now isolated, local population of migratory bull trout. This local population is believed to be more secure than those at Tabor and Mission Reservoirs because of more adequate pool volume, a higher-quality spawning stream, and the absence of brook trout. Dam operations have a minor negative impact on this local population (MBTSG 1996e).

The water management operations of the Flathead Agency Irrigation District are severely limiting to the potential recovery of the local population(s) of bull trout in the Mission Creek complex and the Jocko River. The isolated populations in the three reservoirs on Mission Creek will probably never become secure, but with better management strategies, drawdown limits, and instream flow protection, the chances of persistence would increase (MBTSG 1996e).

Elevated temperatures appear to limit bull trout habitat in several tributaries and in the lower Flathead River below Flathead Lake. In the lower Flathead River, summer water temperatures approach 24 degrees Celsius (75 degrees Fahrenheit) (DosSantos *et al.* 1988). Further research is needed to determine the specific causes of thermal problems and the resulting impact on bull trout. In the lower Flathead River, warm water temperatures may be a natural occurrence, the result of waters warming in the shallow South Bay of Flathead Lake. In addition, land use practices in the Mission Valley have

In the Little Blackfoot River and Flint Creek, irrigation diversions and return flows result in elevated water temperatures (MBTSG 1995e). The consensus of the biologists and hydrologists working in the area is that water temperatures probably exceed the tolerance limits for bull trout in portions of many of these streams.

Within the Blackfoot River drainage, elevated temperatures are found in Nevada, Douglas, Nevada Spring, Cottonwood (near Helmville), Willow (near Sauerkraut Creek), Union, and Elk Creeks and in the Clearwater River (MBTSG 1995b). Summer water temperatures in Nevada Creek and the Blackfoot River below Nevada Creek were consistently above levels considered optimal for trout (Pierce and Peters 1990). Probable causes of elevated temperatures are grazing in riparian zones, reduced riparian health, chronically low summer flows, warm water releases from Nevada Reservoir, and irrigation return flows.

Elevated summer temperature appears to be a habitat problem in many tributaries and in portions of the mainstem Blackfoot River, but thermal conditions may not act as a migration barrier. Preliminary data indicate that, in the Blackfoot system, fish migration primarily occurs before warm water temperatures occur (Swanberg 1997). Further research is needed to determine the specific causes of temperature increases and the impact on bull trout.

Temperatures in the lower Bitterroot River and some of the tributaries meet or exceed 21 degrees Celsius (70 degrees Fahrenheit) during the summer months (Spoon 1987). This evidence suggests that there may be thermal problems that limit bull trout distribution in the Bitterroot River and in the lower reaches of some of the tributaries (MBTSG 1995a). The probable causes of the thermal problems include dewatering, lack of riparian vegetation to shade streams, warm irrigation return flows entering the tributary streams and river, and warm water releases from irrigation reservoirs and private fish ponds. Further research is needed to determine the specific causes of temperature increases in the mainstem Bitterroot River and the impact on bull trout.

Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

In portions of the lower Flathead River drainage downstream of Kerr Dam, agricultural impacts may have been the primary cause of the loss of bull trout (MBTSG 1996e). From the 1910's until the mid-1980's, stream dewatering for irrigated agriculture

probably elevated temperatures from historical temperature regimes in the lower Flathead River and its tributaries (MBTSG 1996e).

Almost all streams entering the middle reaches of the Clark Fork River (or reservoirs) from the Bitterroot Mountains (south side of the drainage) have naturally occurring intermittent reaches. This intermittency influences the streams' usefulness to bull trout (Pratt and Huston 1993). Intermittency also occurs in streams entering from the north. Intermittency has been exacerbated by both natural and human-caused events. Historical natural events include a major forest fire in 1910 and periodic drought. Human disturbance is primarily from mining, silviculture, and agriculture practices.

The Clark Fork River drainage in Montana, downstream of Thompson Falls Dam, contains only about 10 kilometers (6 miles) of chronically dewatered streams (MFWP 1991); none of these streams are important for bull trout. While the *1994 Montana 305(b) Report* (MDHES 1994) identifies several streams that suffer from impaired water quality resulting from agricultural activities, overall, agricultural impacts to bull trout are minor in this portion of the drainage.

Agricultural impacts to the lower drainages entering Lake Pend Oreille are minor and mostly confined to the Pack River watershed (PBTTAT 1998a). Some low-level impacts may also be occurring in the lower Priest River and in portions of the East River mainstem.

In Hoodoo Creek and Cocolalla Creek, two large drainages that enter the Pend Oreille River downstream of Lake Pend Oreille, bull trout are believed to have been present historically. Both drainages have been subjected to extensive agricultural impacts, including cropland conversion, dredging and straightening of the streams, draining of wetlands, loss of riparian vegetation, and temperature and sediment impacts (PBTTAT 1998a). On Cocolalla Creek, a manmade barrier downstream of Round Lake eliminates access for migratory fish. The cumulative impacts of these and other human activities have eliminated bull trout from these watersheds.

Flathead Recovery Subunit

Agriculture impacts to water quality in the Flathead Recovery Subunit occur primarily in the lower reaches of the upper Flathead River, Ashley Creek, and the

Stillwater River (MBTSG 1995c). Though the latter two streams are not generally occupied by bull trout, they do contribute to the water quality degradation of the lake and river system. The Montana Department of Health and Environmental Sciences state that 206 kilometers (128 miles) of streams in the Flathead River watershed suffer impaired water quality as a result of agricultural activities (MDHES 1994). Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks has identified 31 kilometers (19 miles) of streams that are chronically dewatered and 145 kilometers (90 miles) of streams that are periodically dewatered as a result of irrigation withdrawals (MFWP 1991). Not all of these stream segments are occupied by bull trout. The impacts of agriculture on bull trout in this watershed may have been more significant historically than they are at the present time. Current impacts to bull trout from agricultural activities in the Flathead River basin are believed to be low.

Relatively few irrigation diversions occur in this region of Montana. Most of the irrigation water is withdrawn through the use of pumps, so diversions are not a major problem for bull trout.

The outlet streams from the large glacial lakes in Glacier National Park are naturally too warm in the summer to attract bull trout. The valley portions of the Stillwater and Whitefish Rivers also exceed bull trout preference ranges. The extent to which the current thermal regime in these rivers is human-caused is unknown since no data exist prior to 1900.

There is no agricultural development in the South Fork Flathead River drainage upstream of Hungry Horse Dam (MBTSG 1995d) and relatively little in the Swan River drainage (MBTSG 1996b).

Priest Recovery Subunit

Agriculture is not a major land use in the Priest River basin and is not a major problem, especially in the watersheds where bull trout spawn and rear (PBTTAT 1998b).

Summary (Agricultural Practices)

Agricultural impacts to bull trout in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit are primarily a result of water demand. Diversions for irrigation can destabilize stream channels, severely interrupt migratory corridors (blockages and dewatering), and, in some cases,

entrain fish, which are then lost down the ditches. A second, and potentially more serious, issue is the increased water temperature regime common to streams that are heavily diverted and/or subject to receiving irrigation return flows. All of these problems occur and are widespread in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. Some of the worst impacts are in the upper drainages, and these problems are then transmitted to the receiving waters downstream. Overall, agricultural practices represent a significant threat to bull trout recovery in this recovery unit.

Transportation Networks

Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

Two railroads, a secondary highway, and Interstate 90 have been constructed through the Clark Fork River Valley (MBTSG 1995e). These intrusions have adversely affected stream channels that provided habitat for bull trout. Railroad and highway construction have also affected some tributary streams.

Some railroad and highway stream crossings are fish passage barriers. In addition, some streams were channelized during road and railroad construction, resulting in shortening of stream channels, increased erosion, higher water velocities, and loss of fish habitat. These developments probably had a major impact at the time they were constructed, and the impacts continue today.

Beginning in the 1880's, railroads were built all across Montana. By 1940, two rail lines between Butte and Missoula followed the Clark Fork River (MBTSG 1995e). There were also spurs between Drummond and Phillipsburg along Flint Creek, from Butte to Georgetown along Warm Springs Creek, and along the Little Blackfoot River (Periman 1994). Although most of these railroads are no longer operating, they had a significant impact on these rivers because of the modifications that were made to stream channels during railroad construction.

Major road development began in the 1860's with the construction of the Mullan Trail (Periman 1994). At the present time, all of the major drainages have paved roads, and most of the minor drainages have roads of varying types. The Clark Fork River has major transportation corridors on both sides of the river: a four-lane interstate highway and a railroad. A considerable amount of the river has been channelized.

Some culverts in the upper Clark Fork River drainage are barriers to fish passage. However, in some areas, impassable culverts assist in keeping introduced fish out of a watershed. Culvert barriers are not considered a significant threat to bull trout in the Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit at this time, except in localized instances. Historically, impassible culverts may have been a major problem for migratory bull trout in the Blackfoot River drainage. However, in recent years, some of the most problematic culverts have been replaced, including culverts in Bear, Belmont, Blanchard, Chamberlain, and Rock Creeks. Problems remain, in particular in the upper Blackfoot River drainage (*e.g.*, North Fork Cottonwood Creek); see Pierce and Podner (2000).

A major highway corridor parallels much of the mainstem Blackfoot River. Potential spills of toxic substances are a concern along all transportation corridors (MBTSG 1995b). Road maintenance may impact bull trout when road sanding or deicing materials enter the stream or when road grading increases stream sediment loads.

Several canyon meanders of the East Fork Bitterroot River were straightened for U.S. Highway 93, and the location of the highway remains problematic along much of the Bitterroot River (MBTSG 1995a). The Skalkaho Highway is located on a major geologic fault, is poorly designed, and drains large sediment loads into the adjacent streams. The St. Regis River has experienced severe impacts from channelization due to interstate highway and railroad construction (MBTSG 1996e).

Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

The mainstem Clark Fork River is a major transportation corridor. Nearly 296 kilometers (184 miles) of 14 streams are reported to suffer water quality impairment because of highway, road, and bridge development in the mid-reaches of the Clark Fork River drainage (MDHES 1994). In the Lower Clark Fork River drainage, two core areas (Prospect Creek and the Bull River) have major roads that parallel the streams (MBTSG 1996a). The railroad along the lower reaches of the Jocko River restricts the floodplain and, in some locations, forms a dike.

Roads and railroads in the Lake Pend Oreille basin have been constructed to provide access for timber harvest, mining, and recreation and to provide infrastructure for urban development, travel, and commerce. Many larger stream drainages within the

Lake Pend Oreille Key Watershed, including the lower Priest River and the East River, have roads of varying quality that run parallel to the channels (PBTTAT 1998a).

On steep or unstable slopes, roads that are poorly planned, constructed, or maintained have washed out or triggered large debris flows that have filled stream channels with sediments and resulted in instability even decades after the roads have been abandoned (PBTTAT 1998a). Such roads will continue to degrade until they are identified and either upgraded or properly abandoned. Many roads were originally built for mining or timber harvest purposes and were subsequently taken over by counties or road districts for public use and residential access. Maintenance is often infrequent and not adequate to limit sediment delivery to streams.

Construction of new roads may result in sedimentation if adequate sediment delivery mechanisms are not considered**.** In Lightning Creek, a 98 percent increase in mass wasting occurred in third-, fourth-, and fifth-order streams after logging roads were constructed (PBTTAT 1998a). New road construction in the Cabinet Mountains portion of the basin poses a threat of mass wasting because altered hydrology can increase the slippage of glacial tills perched on bedrock slip-planes (PBTTAT 1998a).

The Lightning Creek watershed has an extensive forest road system. Road erosion, road failure (slides), and culvert blockage have been large contributors of bedload and sediment to Lightning Creek (PBTTAT 1998a). Poor road location and design (built on wood slash fill) in many areas have resulted in slides, slumps, and increased peak runoff flows; the potential for road failure is compounded by the fact that, geologically, this watershed is already conducive to natural mass wasting. Landslide activity in Lightning Creek is strongly related to both road and road/clear-cutting impacts, and slide erosion rates are 88 times greater for roaded areas and 97 times greater for road/clear-cut areas than for unmanaged forest areas (PBTTAT 1998a). In 1989, of the total amount of slide material volume measured (246,000 cubic meters [22,533 cubic yards]) in Lightning Creek, road and road/clear-cutting impacted slides were 58 percent of all slides and 75.5 percent of the total slide volume (PBTTAT 1998a). Most of these slides (75 percent) originated on road fill slopes or immediately below the road.

Road construction has also resulted in loss of riparian forest canopy and loss of recruitment of large organic debris to the stream. The main Lightning Creek channel is

highly impacted and unstable in most reaches (PBTTAT 1998a). Lower reaches of this stream exhibit severe bedload deposition. Bedload deposition creates migration barriers (intermittency) in many locations, barriers that may have shifted timing of bull trout migration in Lightning Creek. The Lightning Creek channel, near its mouth, is overly widened and extensively braided. The channel in this area continues to carve a new course during high spring flows each year. The railroad and highway bridges on lower Lightning Creek may be contributing to the bedload aggradation problem by constricting flows and creating a deposition area. Past road repair/maintenance in Lightning Creek has been troublesome and costly. Repair costs for the 1980 road failure/slide event alone were more than $875,000 (PBTTAT 1998a).

Existing information on watershed conditions in East Fork Lightning Creek indicates that the system is in poor condition as a result of flooding, road construction and the subsequent failures, and logging activity (PBTTAT 1998a). A logging road parallels East Fork Lightning Creek for much of the lower 3 kilometers (2 miles), and there are several stream crossings within the drainage. The Lightning Creek drainage has one of the highest precipitation rates of any location in Idaho, and serious flooding as a result of rain-on-snow events or spring melt has been documented over 12 times since the 1890's (PBTTAT 1998a). Currently, portions of the road have been captured by the creek, and East Fork Lightning Creek is generally considered to be highly unstable, with impaired fish habitat conditions. This creek received significant volumes of landslide debris into the stream channel because of the location of roads in relation to the stream channel (PBTTAT 1998a). During 1994, bull trout juveniles were observed in isolated side channels that were created by excess bedload and failure of the road.

Current watershed conditions in Trestle Creek are closely associated with past road building in the drainage (USDA 1995). Roads built on unstable geology in Cochran Draw and in the headwaters contributed elevated bedload to the stream channel (PBTTAT 1998a). In-channel bedload problems originate from blocked road culverts, past road failures, and subsequent land slides. From 1994 to 1995, the U.S. Forest Service obliterated and recontoured 29 to 32 kilometers (18 to 20 miles) of problem, or potential problem, roads in the Trestle Creek watershed to reduce the risk of mass wasting. Currently, only two short spur roads that can access riparian areas of Trestle Creek exist on National Forest land.

Roads built in the Trestle Creek floodplain have also resulted in loss of instream woody debris and removal of riparian vegetation and tree canopy, both important for stream shading. Approximately 5 kilometers (3 miles) of county road run parallel to Trestle Creek in its lower section, but less than 1 kilometer (0.6 mile) of road is located immediately adjacent to the stream (PBTTAT 1998a). In some locations, the road occupies the floodplain and has reduced the amount of riparian vegetation that provides large woody debris and shade to the stream. Highway 200 acts as a dike that prevents Trestle Creek from using its floodplain and constricts the stream channel, resulting in deposition of bedload material. Consequently, this portion of stream channel requires periodic dredging to keep the stream under the bridge, and the quality of fish habitat is diminished in this area. Channel braiding and water loss to subsurface flow can result from excessive bedload deposition. On National Forest lands, bedload is the most prominent factor affecting the channel and decreasing the pool volume in Trestle Creek (USDA 1995). Excess bedload also contributes to loss of habitat in some lower reaches of Trestle Creek. The current high level of bedload aggradation (build-up) at the railroad trestle and near the stream mouth poses risks for trestle failure and stream intermittency.

The Kickbush Gulch slide has a history of failures that have contributed fine sediment to Gold Creek (PBTTAT 1998a). In 1996, a large road failure in the Kickbush area contributed significant amounts of road and hill-slope material to this stream. Separate Bonneville Power Administration and Avista transmission lines span Gold Creek in the lower reach near Lakeview (PBTTAT 1998a). In the early 1950's, timber and vegetation were cleared in a 76-meter (250-foot) corridor for line construction. The lines cross, then run parallel to, Gold Creek at one location. Loss of woody debris recruitment may affect this portion of stream, and shade is diminished.

Road failures have occurred in upper reaches of the Granite Creek watershed (PBTTAT 1998a). Road density is about 1.2 kilometers per square kilometer (0.46 mile per square mile) of watershed. In the winter of 1995 to 1996, a portion of the Kilroy Bay Road failed during flooding, and the road has been relocated.

There are over 8 kilometers (5 miles) of roads in the Char Creek watershed, and average road density is between 0.6 and 1.2 kilometers per square kilometer (0.23 to 0.46 miles per square mile). Landslide activity was related to roads in the Char Creek portion of the watershed (PBTTAT 1998a). Most of the roads are within a small tributary

watershed with four stream crossings. Roads were constructed on steep slopes, and road failures have contributed bedload to Char Creek and East Fork Lightning Creek downstream.

A road parallels Porcupine Creek for most of its length, crossing several headwater channels (PBTTAT 1998a). Evidence of fill slope failures at headwater stream crossings is common, and failed culverts can be seen at the bottom of slides in the Porcupine Creek channel. Landslides from road failures probably occurred recently (within the last 10 years).

Grouse Creek has an extensive road network, including a raised bed road that bisects the floodplain in some locations (PBTTAT 1998a). The drainage was historically railroad logged, and remnants of the rail grade are still evident in the floodplain. More analysis work is needed on roads in the drainage to assess impacts and whether corrective measures need to be taken. Road repair work following the 1995 to 1996 floods resulted in localized channelization near bridges and road corridors.

Pack River has an extensive road system on private, State, and Federal lands. Because of the sandy soils, fine sediment is readily transported from roads to stream channels. Three railroads (Burlington Northern Santa Fe, Union Pacific, and Montana Rail Link) and two highways (U.S. 95 and Idaho 200) cross lower Pack River in the migration corridor, creating a risk to migrating bull trout from toxic spills.

Flathead Recovery Subunit

Overall, stream crossings and culverts are not a significant problem in the Flathead River drainage (MBTSG 1995c, 1995d, 1996b). Highways and railroads have impacted bull trout in a few areas, most significantly on Bear Creek in the Middle Fork Flathead River drainage. This stream has been heavily channelized and often receives foreign substances from train derailments. There is potential for a spill of toxic materials to have a catastrophic impact on this stream and on the Middle Fork and mainstem Flathead River downstream.

State Secondary Road 486 traverses the entire length of the North Fork Flathead River into British Columbia. An interior road in Glacier National Park on the other side of the river also encroaches on the floodplain in some locations. Several landslides have

been problematic for the maintenance of this road, and the dust from heavy traffic contributes sediment to the system (MBTSG 1995c). Proposed paving of a portion of the main North Fork Road has been portrayed as a controversy, the press pitting bull trout against grizzly bears. The impacts of dust to bull trout are probably minimal since the river is foraging, migrating, and overwintering habitat. However, paving the road will increase access to the drainage, compounding the problems related to angling, poaching, and development.

Highway 83 parallels the Swan River along its entire length. Analysis of sediment taken from deep within Swan Lake shows a spike corresponding with initial highway construction (Spencer 1991b). A recently completed project to widen this highway, along with installation of telephone and utility systems throughout the region, raised concerns about increased sedimentation, and precautions were taken. To date, the Flathead Recovery Subunit Team is not aware of any documented adverse impacts. Many stream crossings on the east side of the Swan River create the potential for catastrophic impacts resulting from a toxic material spill (MBTSG 1996b). The Swan River drainage has no major tributary to buffer catastrophic impacts. Threats resulting from the transportation system in the drainage will probably become greater in the future as the highway is improved and traffic increases.

Since the time of dam and road construction in the early 1950's, numerous tributaries to Hungry Horse Reservoir (*e.g.,* Felix, Harris, Murray, and Riverside Creeks) in the South Fork Flathead River drainage have been blocked by impassable culverts (MBTSG 1995d). In most instances, the blockages were on streams that are potential spawning habitat for westslope cutthroat trout or mountain whitefish, and use by bull trout, especially for juvenile rearing, is possible. In 1996 and 1997, projects to correct passage barriers to seven streams were successfully completed (Knotek *et al.* 1997), and follow-up monitoring has shown that juvenile bull trout are using streams upstream of former barriers.

Priest Recovery Subunit

As typically occurs in watersheds with an extensive history of timber harvest, many of the major haul roads have encroached on the riparian zone. The close proximity of these roads to the streams makes it difficult to prevent sediment from entering the streams (PBTTAT 1998b). Increased use of these poorly designed and located road

systems by recreationists adds to the problem in this watershed. Roads closely parallel the Hughes Fork, the lakeshore of Priest Lake, and Gold, Lion, Two Mouth, Granite, Indian, Kalispell, and Soldier Creeks (PBTTAT 1998b).

Though the streambed of the mainstem Hughes Fork above Hughes Meadows is primarily composed of sand, the stream is hydrologically stable. During the 1940's, a reach of the stream running through Hughes Meadows was channelized for construction of an airstrip, and this reach is now extremely unstable (PBTTAT 1998b). This instability is apparent further downstream in the excessive depositional features and the lack of sufficient large woody debris.

Summary (Transportation Networks)

Transportation systems were a major contributor to the decline of bull trout in this recovery unit. Separating the direct effect of the roads and railroads from the development associated with their construction is difficult. Separating the effects of transportation corridors in forested habitat from the legacy effects of forest management is also difficult. Construction methods during the late 19th and early 20th century, primarily channelization and meander cutoffs, caused major impacts on many of these streams—impacts that are still being manifested. Such impacts seldom occur with new roads. However, significant problems remain and are associated with passage barriers, sediment production, unstable slopes, improper maintenance, and high road densities. All of these problems impact bull trout and can only be addressed on a site-by-site basis.

Mining

Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

Over a century of mining and smelting activity in the Butte and Anaconda areas has resulted in designation of the nation's largest Superfund site with the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Descriptions of the river from early researchers clearly indicate that Silver Bow and lower Warm Springs Creeks and the upper Clark Fork River were void of fish prior to 1900 as a result of mining-related pollution (Evermann 1901).

To this day, the entire 40-kilometer (25-mile) length of Silver Bow Creek is fishless due to mining wastes originating in Butte. The bed, banks, and much of the

floodplain of Silver Bow Creek and the upper Clark Fork River are contaminated with mine tailings. Some recovery of the upper Clark Fork River has occurred because of improved waste treatment and reductions in the discharge of mining wastes to the river. Still, fish populations in the upper 193 kilometers (120 miles) of the Clark Fork River remain depressed in some reaches because of mining wastes (Phillips and Lipton 1995).

Declines in fish abundance are attributed to copper that originated from eroding tailings that were piled on the riverbanks. The eroding pilings increased copper loading and elevated copper concentrations for a prolonged period in a downstream direction. Copper concentrations are diluted downstream of major tributaries (Phillips and Lipton 1995).

Most other drainages in the upper Clark Fork River basin have also been impacted by mining activity. The first Montana gold discovery was at Gold Creek (tributary to the Clark Fork River) in 1852. In the placer gold rush period of 1859 to 1866, individual prospectors, looking for gold, panned along creeks. If gold was found, the stream banks were sampled to locate the source of the mineral. In the 1870's, hydraulic mining came into heavy use. The large-scale destruction from hydraulic mining is still very much in evidence in the Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit (Periman 1994). At least 562 kilometers (349 miles) of streams within the upper Clark Fork River basin have been identified as impaired by mining (MDHES 1994). Further downstream, damage was done by placer mining in the St. Regis River and in Ninemile, Cedar, Trout, and Quartz Creeks (MBTSG 1996e). Other streams that have impaired water quality as a result of mining include Cache, Cedar, Crow, Josephine, Kennedy, Little McCormick, and Trout Creeks, as well as the Clark Fork River and Oregon Gulch (MDHES 1994).

Placer and hardrock mining have occurred in both the Little Blackfoot River and Rock Creek drainages. In the Little Blackfoot River, pollution from historic mines continues to impact fisheries resources (MBTSG 1996e). The Brooklyn mine in the Boulder Creek drainage has been identified as having adverse effects and is scheduled for reclamation. The Rock Creek drainage contains the Gem Mountain Mine, as well as several historic mining districts. Exploration continues today for new hard rock developments. Most Clark Fork River and Flint Creek tributary streams have historic

and/or current mines. Mining, both past and present, continues to be a major threat to the restoration of bull trout in the upper Clark Fork River drainage (MBTSG 1996e).

Mining in the headwaters of the Blackfoot River began in approximately 1865. A variety of minerals and commodities, including gold, silver, lead, and copper, were recovered from numerous small placer and hard rock mining operations. Although milling has not been widespread in the drainage, milled tailings were discharged into the headwaters at several sites (Moore *et al.* 1991).

Mining has had an extensive impact on aquatic ecosystems in the Blackfoot River drainage (MBTSG 1995b). Numerous mines have been developed in the southern and western portions of the basin. Impacts include the direct loss of aquatic habitat and, particularly in the upper portions of the drainage, chemical contamination. Overall, the Montana Department of Environmental Quality lists 11 streams in the Blackfoot River drainage that suffer water quality impairment from mining activities, including Day Gulch and Beartrap, Douglas, Elk, Jefferson, Poorman, Sandbar, Washington, Washoe, West Fork Ashby, and Willow Creeks (MDHES 1994). Pierce and Podner (2000) also identify Seven Up Pete and Sauerkraut Creeks as needing restoration from past mining activities.

Mine drainage from adits and waste piles continues to contaminate waters in the headwaters of the Blackfoot River drainage (MBTSG 1995b). Contaminant input from mine effluent in the headwaters of the Blackfoot River is apparent from downstream trends of solute constituents. The pH of effluent in contaminated tributaries that flow into the upper 5 kilometers (3 miles) of the river ranges from 3 to 6.5. Concentrations of sulfate are extremely high in the more acidic tributaries and decrease downstream of those sources (Moore *et al.* 1991). Alkalinity is also depressed for about 32 kilometers (20 miles) because of the effects of acid mine drainage (Ingman *et al.* 1990). Both acidity and sulfate concentration lessen downstream of the headwater sources in the Blackfoot River (Moore *et al.* 1991). Inflows of limestone groundwater or springs below Lincoln enhance the river's buffering capacity against changes in pH and the effects of metals (Ingman *et al.* 1990).

Trace metal contamination originates from a small number of sources on Blackfoot River headwater tributaries, particularly the Mike Horse Mine. Concentrations

of solutes decrease rapidly in the upper few kilometers below their sources. However, solute metal contaminants transfer to the particulate phase, and at least some cadmium and zinc remain bioavailable over long stretches of the river (Moore *et al.* 1991).

In 1975, the tailings dam at the Mike Horse Mine washed out, sending tons of metal-contaminated tailings into the upper Blackfoot River (MBTSG 1995b). These tailings continue to impact aquatic life in the Blackfoot River. Studies of fish populations conducted before and after the tailings pond failure indicate acute mortalities of brook and cutthroat trout (Moore *et al.* 1991; Spence 1997), and fish population densities remain reduced (Peters and Spoon 1989; Moore *et al.* 1991).

New mines may be developed in the Blackfoot River drainage in the future. A large open-pit gold mine (the McDonald Gold Project) was proposed near Lincoln. It was the subject of heated public policy debate until development of the mine was blocked by a 1999 State law resulting from a successful citizen-sponsored ballot initiative prohibiting new cyanide heap leach mining projects. Given the presence of valuable ore bodies, new mining will probably continue to be of interest in the basin.

Toxic sediment from tailings on the upper Clark Fork River has been trapped and deposited in the small reservoir behind Milltown Dam on the Clark Fork River just downstream of the confluence of the Blackfoot River (MBTSG 1995e). Recently, Pennsylvania Power and Light of Montana (formerly Montana Power Company), the owners of the dam, announced that it would no longer generate power at this run-of-the-river hydroelectric facility due to economic considerations. However, there continues to be an enormous risk to downstream fish populations and water quality because of the sediment deposits. Pennsylvania Power and Light of Montana, the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, and the public will probably make a decision on the ultimate fate of this facility over the next few years. Ideally, the dam would be removed and the sediments hauled away from the floodplain for permanent disposal, but the costs associated with this solution are high.

Past or present mining activity has been limited in the Bitterroot River drainage and is not a significant issue in this area (MBTSG 1995a). Hughes Creek, a tributary of the West Fork Bitterroot River, has had extensive placer and dredge mining.

The State of Montana and partners successfully negotiated an out-of-court settlement with Atlantic Richfield Corporation for damages to the ecosystem of the upper Clark Fork River valley from the mining legacy effects at Butte and Anaconda. The settlement totaled approximately $213 million. Separate compensation for damages to the Clark Fork River itself are still being negotiated. A great deal of information has been collected on the upper Clark Fork River in connection with the litigation between the State of Montana and Atlantic Richfield Corporation (MDOJ 1999). This information will be helpful for planning bull trout restoration projects.

Tens of millions of dollars will be available for restoration of aquatic habitat in the 21st century as a result of this settlement. Plans are now being developed for effectively using the money (MDOJ 1999). Though such a remediation effort is unprecedented, the magnitude of the problem is immense. The 1995 remediation plan states: ". . . the most that can be achieved in the way of restoration of the Upper Clark Fork River Basin within the lifetimes of persons alive today is to ameliorate natural resource injuries, enabling the resource and the services provided by the resources to recover substantially" (State of Montana and Rocky Mountain Consultants 1995)

Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

Permits are currently being sought to operate an underground copper/silver mine and mill that could produce 10,000 tons of ore per day in the Rock Creek drainage of the Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit near Noxon. The proposed tailings impoundment would store about 100 million tons of tailings near the confluence of Rock Creek and the Clark Fork River. The Rock Creek drainage has been identified as one of two spawning and rearing streams for migratory bull trout living in Cabinet Gorge Reservoir (MBTSG 1996a). Sediment levels in Rock Creek already exceed 40 percent fines (Smith 1993, 1994), which is high enough to significantly reduce bull trout survival to emergence. This mine and mill complex pose a high risk to bull trout in the Rock Creek drainage and, potentially, in downstream waters.

There are areas in the Lake Pend Oreille basin that have been impacted by underground and open-pit mining operations and the resulting effluent from these closed or abandoned mines (PBTTAT 1998a). Many sites are not now being operated or have been abandoned without reclamation. Toxic substances (primarily heavy metals) emanating from abandoned mine sites could block migratory corridors or impact life

stages of bull trout, but, to date, heavy metals have not been identified as a significant water quality problem in the direct tributaries to Lake Pend Oreille. Increased sedimentation or release of toxins into surface or groundwater may occur if specified best management practices are not designed and implemented.

On some tributaries to Lake Pend Oreille, mining companies still hold water rights to divert stream water for power and mining operations (PBTTAT 1998a). Thirteen separate water rights for surface water diversion are held in Trestle Creek, totaling 0.74 cubic meters per second (26.17 cubic feet per second) (PBTTAT 1998a). One of these water rights is for 0.71 cubic meters per second (25 cubic feet per second) and was initially granted for a mining claim; the water right does not appear to have been used for well over five years (PBTTAT 1998a).

Past mining operations in the Gold Creek watershed, which drains into the south arm of Lake Pend Oreille, have impacted this stream and continue to affect channel equilibrium. Both Chloride Gulch and Gold Creek, above the confluence with West Gold Creek, exhibit channel disequilibrium and intermittency as a result of excess bedload inputs stemming from mining operations (PBTTAT 1998a). These streams go dry for most of the summer season in areas where width-to-depth ratios, channel confinement, and channel sinuosity are outside normal ranges. All intermittent reaches in Gold Creek are located downstream of areas where extensive mine waste deposits were placed directly in the stream. Waste from the Conjecture Mine has already contributed an estimated 38,000 cubic meters (50,000 cubic yards) of sediment into the channel, with another 84,000 cubic meters (110,000 cubic yards) available with future runoff (USDA 1997). The Weber Mine in Gold Creek and the Idaho Lakeview Mine in Chloride Gulch have introduced and continue to supply the stream channel with large sediment loads.

Flathead Recovery Subunit

At the present time, mining is not known to be impacting bull trout in the Flathead River drainage (MBTSG 1995c). However, there is a large coal deposit in the North Fork Flathead River drainage in British Columbia. If the deposit is mined, as was proposed in the 1970's, a potential loss of 10 percent of the spawning stock of Flathead Lake migratory bull trout was estimated (Fraley *et al.* 1989). Also water quality impacts could be experienced downstream. Because the coal is in Canada, the United States has

relatively little control over mine plans, except under the authority of the International Joint Commission.

Exploratory oil and gas development has been sporadic in the Flathead River basin, but has continued for nearly a century without any fields being developed. Location and full development of a large deposit would be a major concern because of the fragile and pristine nature of much of this ecosystem.

Current and historical mining does not threaten the Swan Lake or South Fork Flathead River bull trout populations (MBTSG 1996b, 1995d). No existing mining operations occur other than recreational gold panning. However, a few mining claims are scattered in the South Fork Flathead River drainage (*e.g.*, Baptiste), but none are currently active.

Priest Recovery Subunit

Mining is not a common activity in this drainage, and impacts to bull trout from previous mine exploration have been low to nonexistent. The Continental Mine in the Boundary Creek watershed of the Kootenai River drainage was often accessed from the Upper Priest River side, causing some road-related impacts (PBTTAT 1998b).

Summary (Mining)

The legacy effect of mining, particularly in the upper Clark Fork River drainage, will continue to impact bull trout for many decades to come. Because of extreme water quality degradation in the upper watershed, dating back to the 19th century, continued vigilance and purposeful improvement will be required for many decades before the full potential of the aquatic resources can be restored. Some major portions of the Clark Fork River watershed have never been materially impacted by mining. Meanwhile, existing mines and new mine proposals continue to develop and have the potential to negatively impact some core areas and local bull trout populations.

<u>Residential Development</u>

Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

The impacts of residential development in the upper Clark Fork River watershed vary by location, but where impacts occur, they can be severe. Some impacts may be partially mitigated by an active program to acquire conservation easements to protect

fragile lands in riparian zones. Newly adopted rules, such as those by Missoula County to require protection of riparian zones, have been difficult to enforce and represent the exception, and not the norm.

For many years, excessive nutrients have been reported throughout the mainstem Clark Fork River. The communities of Butte and Deer Lodge discharge municipal sewage effluent into the Clark Fork River and are the main point sources for nutrients in the upper Clark Fork River (MDHES 1994).

The human population is growing in the Blackfoot River drainage, particularly in the area around Lincoln. Lewis and Clark County grew 17.3 percent in the decade of the 1990's, according to U.S. Census Bureau statistics (Inter Lake, *in litt.*, 2001). Alteration of riparian zones is often a major impact associated with residential and commercial development. Some areas in the upper portions of Rock Creek, the Ninemile Creek Valley, and the lower portions of Rattlesnake Creek are under development pressure. Many other areas have potential for future development.

The lower Bitterroot River has been determined to be a major nonpoint source of nutrient pollution in the upper Clark Fork River basin, primarily from sewage effluent from towns and also from land development along the river (USEPA 1993). About 628 kilometers (390 miles) of stream in the Bitterroot, including the entire mainstem, are impaired or partially impaired for beneficial uses of the water (MDHES 1994). Sources of impairment are primarily from agriculture (siltation and flow modification), silviculture (siltation and habitat modification), and resource extraction. However, land development, road and highway modifications, and wastewater effluent also contribute to impairment (MDHES 1994).

Since the 1930's, there has been rapid growth of home building along riparian zones in the Bitterroot Valley (Javorsky 1994). In the 1990 to 1994 time period, Ravalli County had the highest population growth (22.8 percent) in Montana, and that rapid pace has not abated (MBTSG 1995a). Streambank modification and destabilization and municipal point source pollution have been identified as sources of impairment of water quality in the Bitterroot River (MDHES 1994). Rural residential development is a high risk to long-term aquatic ecosystem health in the Bitterroot River drainage. Development

exacerbates temperature problems, increases nutrient loads, decreases bank stability, and increases pressures to alter stream and riparian habitats.

Bull trout in headwater streams in the Bitterroot River drainage are not currently being directly impacted because many of the remaining local bull trout populations are on lands owned by the U.S. Forest Service. However, the potential to restore migratory fish in the Bitterroot River is being severely compromised by uncontrolled urban sprawl in the Bitterroot Valley.

Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

The northwest corner of Montana remains sparsely populated. However, in recent years, the human population has been increasing, and in the future, rural residential development may be a high risk to the restoration of bull trout (MBTSG 1996a). In the decade of the 1990's, Lincoln, Sanders, Lake, and Mineral Counties grew 7.8 percent, 18.0 percent, 26.0 percent, and 17.2 percent, respectively (Inter Lake, *in litt.*, 2001). Growth is particularly evident in watersheds bordered by private lands, such as along the Bull and the Jocko Rivers.

In some watersheds in the Pend Oreille portion of the lower Clark Fork River basin, housing subdivisions and urban development are expanding. Trestle Creek has considerable residential development along 5.6 kilometers (3.5 miles) of its lower reach (PBTTAT 1998a). Some residents have cleared riparian zone areas and removed canopy cover to increase views and to plant lawns and gardens. Homeowners in riparian areas sometimes remove large woody debris from the channel to reduce the perceived risk of floods. Removal of these pool-forming features (*i.e.*, trees and wood) from the stream has reduced pool frequency and volume in the lower 5 kilometers (3 miles) of stream running through private land. Homes exist in the natural floodplain now, and further subdivision is occurring for new homes. Surface erosion occurs because of roads and driveways. Urban encroachment in Trestle Creek has contributed to stream channel instability and disequilibrium, bedload and sediment input, increased stream temperatures in lower reaches, and other streambed damage. Although not verified, other threats may include septic system leakage and associated impacts to water quality (PBTTAT 1998a).

Granite Creek was reportedly dredged in the reach below the Kilroy Bay Road after a large flood in the early 1970's (PBTTAT 1998a). A significant portion of the floodplain downstream of the Kilroy Bay Road has been subdivided and developed. Removing timber and constructing roads for access to lots have also impaired floodplain function. Restoration efforts are underway to partially mitigate these problems.

The lower reach of Strong Creek runs within the city limits of East Hope. This stream runs between houses and lawns that have replaced riparian vegetation on both sides of the channel. Septic systems may also affect the stream but have not been evaluated. The channel is diked on its northwest bank between the highway and the mouth, resulting in a confined channel.

Flathead Recovery Subunit

The impact of residential development will become increasingly important to bull trout recovery in the Flathead Recovery Subunit. An increasing human population has led to increased lake eutrophication because of nutrient enrichment in Flathead Lake and other large natural lakes within the basin (Flathead Basin Commission 1999). During the 1990's, the human population in Flathead County grew by 25.8 percent, the sixth highest rate of growth among Montana's 56 counties (Inter Lake, *in litt.*, 2001). Recent evidence indicates that the downward trend in water quality in Flathead Lake may be leveling off, in part because of an aggressive campaign by the Flathead Basin Commission and other private and public interests. Unmanaged growth and increased development pose a serious threat to water quality in many of the lakes in the basin (MDHES 1994).

Some residential development is also ongoing in the tributaries used by spawning bull trout in the North and Middle Fork Flathead River drainages (MBTSG 1995c). Domestic sewage from these developments and changes to stream morphology caused by building in the floodplain could reduce habitat quality in the tributaries.

Golf courses often impact riparian areas, causing bank erosion and reduced water quality. Ski area development is expanding into the headwater areas of Big Creek, an important bull trout spawning stream in the North Fork Flathead River drainage (MBTSG 1995c). Downhill ski areas create permanent clear-cuts that have the potential to increase sediment loads and water yields and to change hydrologic patterns.

The human population in the Swan River Valley is also growing rapidly (MBTSG 1996b). The Swan Valley is in Lake and Missoula Counties, which grew in human population by 26.0 percent and 21.8 percent, respectively, during the decade of the 1990's (Inter Lake, *in litt.*, 2001). Requests for State 310 permits to alter the bed and/or immediate banks of streams in the drainage are increasing. Private land in the drainage is concentrated along the Swan River and the lower portions of the tributary drainages. These reaches provide critical migratory corridors and rearing habitat. It is likely that some corporate timber holdings in the drainage may be sold in the future. Such a sale could allow development adjacent to major spawning and rearing areas, though the recent development of a Habitat Conservation Plan with Plum Creek Timber Company is designed, in part, to minimize such impacts (USFWS *et al.* 2000).

Only a few small tracts of private land and scattered mining claims occur in the South Fork Flathead River drainage. Therefore, limited rural residential development is possible upstream of Hungry Horse Dam (MBTSG 1995d).

Priest Recovery Subunit

A study conducted by the Idaho Department of Environmental Quality in 1993 to 1995 examined several components of the lake system, including trophic status indicators of the limnetic zone (open waters), the bathymetry (shape and depth of the basin), plant growth in littoral (near-shore) zones, quantity and quality of inflow waters, characteristics of selected groundwater aquifers, and watershed characterization using a geographical information system (PBTTAT 1998b). Conclusions developed from the three-year water quality study include the following: 1) open waters of Priest and Upper Priest Lakes can be classified as oligotrophic; 2) lake waters of shallow near-shore sampling sites showed no indication of nutrient enrichment linked to onshore human development; 3) both lakes do exhibit a marked decline in water clarity during spring runoff in tributaries; 4) phytoplankton growth in Priest Lake may be co-limited by phosphorus and nitrogen, at least during summer months; 5) attached algae growth in the littoral zone of many Priest Lake shoreline areas appears excessive given the low nutrient content of ambient near-shore waters; 6) the primary nutrient fueling sources relating to attached algae biomass were not determined; 7) phosphorus, nitrogen, and sediment loading from various sources into Priest Lake was determined as low to moderate, except that loading per area of runoff from some residential areas can be

high; 8) some isolated areas of groundwater sampling indicate an altering of back-groundwater quality by sewage effluent plumes; and 9) project consultants consider human-induced nutrients and sediments as a potential threat for deterioration of Priest Lake water quality (Rothrock and Mosier 1997).

Most of the residential development in this watershed is seasonal and is related to the growing recreational demands from the expanding urban areas in northern Idaho and eastern Washington. Impacts are particularly acute on the shore of Priest Lake (PBTTAT 1998b). Most of the drainages that contribute to Priest Lake have experienced growing recreational and urban use, with impacts most pronounced in the watersheds of Two Mouth, Granite, and Kalispell Creeks. Urbanization increases the demand for flood control, stream crossings, water diversion or withdrawal, and other stream channel alterations that are potentially harmful to bull trout. These impacts will be expected to increase as the popularity of this area for recreational activities continues to grow.

Summary (Residential Development)

Ultimately, unmanaged growth and residential sprawl may be among the biggest threats to the recovery of bull trout in this recovery unit. The entire recovery unit holds many of the attributes that are increasingly attractive to people seeking relief from the urban environment, and human population growth in western Montana and northern Idaho has accelerated. The way in which this growth is managed and our ability to limit the impacts of growth, in particular on bull trout spawning and rearing streams, are pivotal to the success of the bull trout recovery effort. Increasing human populations have a direct impact on all of the other categories of risk that affect bull trout.

Fisheries Management

Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

The introduced sport fish species found in the upper Clark Fork River drainage in Montana include brook trout, brown trout, rainbow trout, lake trout, Yellowstone cutthroat trout, kokanee salmon, Arctic grayling, largemouth bass, northern pike, yellow perch, pumpkinseed sunfish, and fathead minnow. Walleye, apparently from

illegal transplants, have been found in several waters. To date, however, walleye are not known to have established reproducing populations in this headwaters portion of the Columbia River.

Brook trout and lake trout, the two common species most closely related to bull trout, are believed to represent the greatest threat to bull trout in the Clark Fork River basin as a whole. Brook trout are present in nearly all mainstem Clark Fork River tributaries. Bull trout hybridize with brook trout, and the offspring are generally sterile. The available data indicate that brook trout presence can create an unstable situation, resulting in a dramatic decline or replacement of bull trout (Leary *et al.* 1983).

Brook trout are widely distributed in the Blackfoot River drainage (MBTSG 1995b). Belmont Creek, Landers Fork, and Copper Creek are the only significant bull trout watersheds in the drainage where brook trout are not found. Brook trout are also common in tributary streams of the Bitterroot River(MBTSG 1995a). Approximately 75 percent of the bull trout streams within the Bitterroot River drainage contain brook trout, although not necessarily in the same stream reaches as the bull trout. Some genetic analysis has been done. Streams that are known to contain bull trout x brook trout hybrids in the Bitterroot River drainage include Bear, Gold, Slate, Woods, Nez Perce, Tin Cup, Trapper, Watchtower, and South Fork Lolo Creeks (Leary, *in litt.*, 1991, 1993). Data from the South Fork Lolo Creek and Tolan Creek indicate that brook trout may be expanding their range and numbers at a relatively rapid rate in some habitats.

Brown trout are also suspected to adversely affect bull trout (Nelson 1965; Moyle 1976; Pratt and Huston 1993). At this point, the nature of the negative interaction between bull trout and brown trout, interaction thought to include elements of competition and predation, is not well understood. However, the result of the species' interaction is suspected to be detrimental to bull trout, given the apparent overlap in niches for the two species.

The greatest numbers of brown trout in the upper Clark Fork River occur in the upstream reaches near the town of Warm Springs, where numbers of catchable brown trout consistently exceed 1,600 fish per kilometer (1,000 fish per mile) (MBTSG

1995e). Numbers of brown trout decline rapidly in downstream progression to only about 80 fish per kilometer (50 fish per mile) near Bearmouth. Further downstream, below the confluence with Rock Creek, brown trout numbers increase again (MBTSG 1995e).

Hatchery plants of 10,000 hatchery-reared juvenile brown trout were made in the Huson study section of the Clark Fork River for three successive years from 1986 through 1988 (Berg 1989). Saturation plants of the fish were made to evaluate the potential of using juvenile hatchery brown trout to enhance the existing population of brown trout for the sport fishery. Enhancement of catchable brown trout was not observed in subsequent years, and the plants were discontinued (MBTSG 1995e).

The density of brown trout is relatively even within the mainstem of the Blackfoot River from the mouth upstream to Monture Creek (MBTSG 1995b). But because of differing densities of rainbow trout, the percentage of the overall trout population that is comprised of brown trout varies. In the Johnsrud area, brown trout comprise approximately 5 to 10 percent of the total trout population, and the brown trout numbers appear to be increasing. Further upstream, near the Monture Creek confluence with the Blackfoot River, overall trout densities are lower and brown trout comprise approximately 30 to 40 percent of the trout population. In recent years, total trout densities of all species appear to be increasing in this portion of the Blackfoot River drainage (MBTSG 1995b).

In the section of the Blackfoot River above Monture Creek and below the town of Lincoln, trout numbers (dominated by brown trout) are higher than in the section immediately downstream. The lower portions of Monture Creek and the associated spring creek system are important spawning areas for brown trout. Above the town of Lincoln, brown trout numbers decline (Pierce and Podner 2000).

Brown trout are common in the lower reaches of several tributary streams of the Blackfoot River, as well as in the mainstem river (Pierce and Podner 2000). The Blackfoot River drainage would be a good location for research on brown trout–bull trout interactions because the ranges of the two species overlaps and because historical baseline data are available.

The impact of recent habitat improvement efforts in the Blackfoot River watershed on the relative abundance of brown trout and bull trout is unknown (MBTSG 1995b). If these projects benefit brown trout to a greater extent than they benefit bull trout, they could have the unintended consequence of increasing brown trout numbers at the expense of bull trout. Monitoring is ongoing to determine the specific impacts and to establish general guidelines for habitat improvements to be most beneficial to native species. Fishing regulations in the Blackfoot River have been adjusted to focus angler harvest on brown trout (MFWP, *in litt.*, 2000).

In the past, private ponds have not been a major source of introduced species spreading throughout the upper Clark Fork River drainage (MBTSG 1995e). However, as more people move into the area and build ponds, the risk from fish stocked in private ponds increases. Although private ponds are required to be licensed by Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks before they are stocked with fish, some people are unaware of the law, or circumvent it. The concern is that brook trout, or other species, may spread from ponds into waters where they do not currently exist. Fish diseases could also potentially be introduced through private fish stocking.

At the present time, the trout species stocked in the headwaters of the Clark Fork River drainage by Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks are rainbow trout and westslope cutthroat trout. Westslope cutthroat trout are native throughout the Clark Fork River drainage and are stocked into some of the high mountain lakes in the Clark Fork, Blackfoot, and Bitterroot River basins (MBTSG 1995a, 1995b, 1995e). Rainbow trout are stocked into other lowland lakes. This stocking program is not believed to be detrimental to bull trout.

Additional fish species currently stocked in the Blackfoot River drainage by Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks are largemouth bass, Arctic grayling, and kokanee salmon. Largemouth bass are stocked in Placid and Seeley Lakes. Interactions between largemouth bass and bull trout are unknown, and the agency stocking policy in these waters should be reviewed (MBTSG 1995b).

In the past, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks; other agencies; and individuals stocked a wider variety of nonnative species, including brook trout and brown trout.

Brook trout are no longer stocked west of the continental divide. Fish from past stocking have established self-sustaining populations in many waters of the Clark Fork River valley. Legacy effects of these past stocking practices pose a significant threat to the survival of bull trout today (MBTSG 1995a, 1995b, 1995e).

The illegal introduction of nonnative species by private parties is a growing problem in western Montana (Vashro, *in litt.*, 2000). In addition to the risks posed by spreading introduced species, there is also a risk of introducing fish pathogens. In the upper Clark Fork River drainage, most of the identified risk is from illegal stocking of brook trout. Brook trout may be placed in an important bull trout drainage where they do not currently exist or have been removed (MBTSG 1996c).

Illegal stocking of warmwater or coolwater species such as the northern pike, largemouth bass, or walleye also poses a significant risk to native species. The presence of illegally introduced walleye and northern pike in the Clearwater River drainage is of concern (MBTSG 1995b). And northern pike are present in low numbers in the Clark Fork River in the Superior and St. Regis areas (MBTSG 1996e). Predicting what species might be illegally introduced or what impact those fish may have on the native fauna is impossible. But continued illegal fish introductions will complicate restoration efforts for bull trout.

Efforts of fisheries managers in the upper Clark Fork River watersheds have concentrated on addressing the water quality and habitat problems that affect the river. Much of the recreational fishing in the drainage occurs in the lakes and tributary streams.

In 1999, the mainstem Clark Fork River, upstream of the Bitterroot River, received approximately 40,000 angler days of fishing pressure, and use has been up sharply in recent years (MFWP 2000a). The Blackfoot River is one of the most popular fisheries in the region, and use has increased dramatically with the advent of the movie *A River Runs Through It*. In 1999, angling pressure on the Blackfoot River was estimated at 46,385 angler days (MFWP 2000a), up from 20,043 angler days in 1991 (MFWP 1992). Fishing pressure in 1999 on the Bitterroot River was estimated at 110,931 angler days (MFWP 2000a), up from 52,776 angler days in 1991 (MFWP

1992). The doubling of angler use on these streams over just an eight-year period is significant and is one of the major challenges facing fisheries managers. Angler bycatch of bull trout, including associated incidental or accidental mortality, is a major concern on these heavily fished streams. Pierce *et al*. (2002) list the upward trend in recreational use of the Blackfoot River combined with "the inability of a growing number of anglers to identify bull trout" as a major challenge to the conservation of wild trout.

The evolution of fisheries management priorities in Montana is demonstrated by a case study of Rock Creek. In 1958 to 1959, a creel survey on Rock Creek determined that bull trout comprised 5 percent of the catch. The total catch from Rock Creek was estimated to be 50,300 game fish, meaning that approximately 2,515 bull trout were caught (Averett and Whitney 1959). In 1959, the creel survey was expanded to include the tributaries. A total of 120 bull trout that were checked were harvested from the tributaries. The majority of these (103 fish) came from Ranch Creek. Bull trout were also harvested from Welcome, Gilbert, Cougar, Stoney, and Wyman Creeks (MBTSG 1995e).

In the 1970's, fisheries management in Rock Creek began to change dramatically with the termination of the stocking program for catchable trout. In 1979, creel limits were greatly reduced, and terminal gear restrictions were imposed. These changes were successful in increasing the number of rainbow trout longer than 28 centimeters (11 inches) in the stream (MBTSG 1995e).

Today, Rock Creek supports a significant sport fishery. In 1993, Rock Creek supported 27,400 angler days (MFWP 1994), and bull trout were 1 percent of the catch, meaning that approximately 203 bull trout were caught and released in the creek. In 1999, angler use on Rock Creek was estimated at 40,108 angler days (MFWP 2000a).

Currently, the management goal of the Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks for Rock Creek is to maximize the opportunities for catching trout over 36 centimeters (14 inches) long (MFWP 1989). The Rock Creek sport fishery is comprised primarily of rainbow and brown trout. The strategy for obtaining the management goal is to restrict harvest to three brown trout under 30 centimeters (12 inches) per day. Rainbow trout,

cutthroat trout, and bull trout must be released. Brook trout are exempt from the special limits and have a limit of 20 fish daily (MFWP, *in litt.*, 2000).

The current bull trout management objective for the Blackfoot River, according to the Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks' 1990 management plan for the river, is to increase the standing crop of adult bull trout larger than 2.3 kilograms (5 pounds) to one fish per 300 meters (1,000 feet) (MBTSG 1995b). This goal has not been met, but Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks biologists have stated that they believe this bull trout management objective is conservative.

The Bitterroot River is primarily a rainbow and brown trout fishery and is managed with a complex suite of regulations that emphasize the opportunity to produce larger fish and protect native species from harvest (MBTSG 1995a). If bull trout are to persist in the Bitterroot River over the long term, the focus of fisheries management and regulations may need to continue to evolve toward a goal of further protecting imperiled native species (MBTSG 1995a).

In the past, bull trout harvest (both legal and illegal) may have been a significant risk factor to the species in the upper Clark Fork River portions of the watershed (MBTSG 1995e). The current risk from legal angling is reduced because harvest of bull trout is no longer legal in these drainages. However, misidentification of bull trout and lack of compliance with regulations continue to plague attempts to reduce angler-induced bull trout mortality. A 1999 creel survey on the Blackfoot River determined that bull trout comprised only 2.4 percent of the trout catch but that 8.2 percent of the bull trout caught were kept illegally (Schmetterling and Bohneman 2000). Surprisingly, that proportion (8.2 percent) of bull trout kept was higher than for rainbow trout (7.4 percent) and brown trout (7.5 percent), both of which could be legally harvested if under 30 centimeters (12 inches). Results of the creel survey also showed that anglers reported catching brook trout with much greater frequency than brook trout are known to occur in the mainstem river and that 31 percent of brook trout reportedly caught were kept. If, as suspected, many of those brook trout were in fact juvenile bull trout, the problem of unintentional harvest because of misidentification may be even greater than documented (Pierce and Podner 2000).

Another problem is hooking mortality of bull trout that are caught unintentionally and then released (MBTSG 1995a, 1995b, 1995e). Currently, very little data is available for assessing this issue, but increasing angler participation would be expected to result in an increase in hooking mortality of bull trout. If future data indicate that hooking mortality is a significant problem, additional angling restrictions may be sought on some streams, particularly during spawning season. The drainages that receive higher-than-average fishing pressure (such as Rock Creek, the Bitterroot River, and the Blackfoot River) are more likely to experience hooking mortality problems than more lightly fished waters are.

Accurate information on targeted illegal harvest (poaching) is difficult to obtain. However, there is anecdotal information that concentrations of large bull trout are targeted by poachers (MBTSG 1995a, 1995b, 1995e). In areas where the local population is small, the loss of even a few fish can be significant. Illegal harvest probably continues in the Blackfoot River drainage (MBTSG 1995b). During summer 1994, two of seven bull trout equipped with radio tags disappeared and, because of circumstantial evidence, were suspected to have been illegally harvested.

Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

The introduced fish species found in the lower portions of the Clark Fork River drainage in Montana include Yellowstone cutthroat trout, brook trout, brown trout, rainbow trout, lake trout, lake whitefish, largemouth bass, smallmouth bass, black crappie, northern pike, yellow perch, pumpkinseed, burbot, yellow bullhead, black bullhead, fathead minnow, and central mudminnow. Individual walleye, apparently from illegal transplants, have been found in several waters. To date, however, walleye are not known to have established reproducing populations.

Brook trout are believed to be a particularly high risk in lentic environments and are present in most streams in the lower Clark Fork River drainage that are currently used by bull trout. Brook trout are known to be extensively hybridized with bull trout in Mission Creek (Hansen and DosSantos 1993b).

Brown trout also use most of the waters inhabited by bull trout in the drainage (MBTSG 1996a). Brown and bull trout are known to spawn in the same area of the

Bull River. Brown trout spawn later in the fall than bull trout and may disturb bull trout redds built earlier in the season (Pratt and Huston 1993). Brown trout are common in the Jocko River and also occur in the lower Flathead River (MBTSG 1996a).

Lake trout have been documented to migrate downstream of Flathead Lake through or over Kerr Dam (Carty *et al.* 1997). However, the habitat in Noxon and Cabinet Gorge Reservoirs is probably not suitable for a self-sustaining lake trout population, in part because of warm water temperatures, and many of these fish are suspected to pass through the system into Lake Pend Oreille.

In the mainstem Clark Fork River reservoirs, yellow perch and pumpkinseed are two of the most abundant species present (MBTSG 1996a). Although the interactions between these introduced species and bull trout are not clear, the possibility of adverse interspecies interactions are considered a high risk to bull trout (MBTSG 1996a). Evaluations of the species complex and interactions in the reservoir fish fauna are a high priority under the Avista mitigation program (Washington Water Power Company 1998).

Northern pike are also present in the mainstem reservoirs of the Clark Fork River. Northern pike have been in the lower Clark Fork River drainage since at least the 1950's and are reproducing and well established (MBTSG 1996a). Given the predacious behavior of the northern pike, predation and/or competition between this species and bull trout may occur. The presence of walleye probably resulted from at least two separate illegal introductions into the lower Clark Fork River drainage, but reproduction has not been documented.

Northern pike and largemouth bass have become established in the Flathead River. More recently, smallmouth bass have begun to provide an increasingly popular sport fishery, with trophy class specimens and a new State record caught. The source of these fish is suspected to have been a stocking error by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, with smallmouth bass included with a plant of largemouth bass in Lower Crow Reservoir (L. Evarts, Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes, pers. comm., 2000).

In recent times, the fish species stocked in this portion of the Clark Fork River drainage by Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks are brown trout, westslope cutthroat trout, Kamloops rainbow trout, and largemouth bass (MBTSG 1996a). Westslope cutthroat trout are native throughout the drainage and are stocked into some of the high mountain lakes in the basin. Brown trout were stocked in the Clark Fork River in the 1980's and in lakes in the upper Thompson River drainage in the 1990's. Kamloops rainbow trout are stocked into Noxon Rapids Reservoir under an informal agreement with Idaho Department of Fish and Game.

The portions of the lower Clark Fork River drainage that received the most significant angling pressure in 1999 were the Clark Fork River (22,525 angler days), Thompson River (11,189 angler days), lower Flathead River (3,180 angler days), and Noxon Reservoir (11,330 angler days) (MFWP 2000a). Fishing pressure in Cabinet Gorge Reservoir is quite low (estimated 608 angler days in 1999; MFWP 2000a) because of the historically poor fishery. Fishing pressure is growing on most of these waters.

Immediately prior to closure of Noxon Rapids Dam in August 1958, Thompson Falls Reservoir and the Clark Fork River downstream to Cabinet Gorge Reservoir were chemically treated with rotenone to remove the existing fish populations (Huston 1985). During that era, such treatment was a common management strategy prior to filling a new reservoir. The hope was that poisoning, followed by stocking of rainbow trout, would result in an improved sport fishery for rainbow. Huston (1985) summarized fishery management activities in Noxon and Cabinet Gorge Reservoirs between the early 1950's and the mid-1980's. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks stocked a variety of species, strains, and sizes of introduced fish in an attempt to establish a sport fishery. These efforts were largely unsuccessful.

In the early 1980's, management emphasis in the mainstem reservoirs of the Clark Fork River shifted away from coldwater salmonids and toward a warmwater bass fishery (MBTSG 1996a). Largemouth bass had persisted in the reservoirs, even following the chemical treatment of the late 1950's, and smallmouth bass were stocked into Noxon Reservoir several times, beginning in 1982. At about the same time, reservoir operations were modified to reduce drawdown. Since that time, bass

numbers have increased, along with numbers of northern pike, yellow perch and pumpkinseed, and the bass fishery is currently providing a sought-after sport fishery in Noxon Reservoir (Huston 1985). The management goal of maintaining a viable sport fishery for introduced species may prove to be in conflict with the goal of restoring bull trout in this drainage, so further evaluation is underway (MBTSG 1996a).

Accurate information on illegal harvest is difficult to obtain. Pratt and Huston (1993) describe poaching techniques and locations in the lower Clark Fork River. Dynamiting, spearing, snagging, and shooting were all historically used by poachers in this area. Heavy snagging harvest is know to have once occurred in the Bull River. Also, hooking mortality in snag fisheries tends to be high (Long 1997). In areas where the population is small, the loss of even a few fish can be significant.

Lake Pend Oreille

Lake Pend Oreille represents a critical sanctuary for the remaining stock of adfluvial bull trout in the Clark Fork River basin. Like the waters upstream, the lake supports a wide variety of introduced species (see description in the subsection on the Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit). Bull trout across their range often appear restricted to waters upstream of the waters used by introduced rainbow trout and brown trout (PBTTAT 1998a). However, in some key watersheds, bull trout and rainbow trout evolved together. Bull trout and rainbow trout are found together in many Lake Pend Oreille tributary stream reaches, and they have coexisted in the lake since rainbows were introduced there in 1919. In 1941, the Gerrard strain of rainbow trout, which is predaceous and grows to large sizes, was introduced. Gerrard rainbows use the same prey base (kokanee salmon) as large bull trout, and the potential for competition exists. Vidergar (2000) analyzed stomach contents from 180 Kamloops rainbow trout taken from Lake Pend Oreille and found that 76.8 percent of the diet was kokanee salmon; 11.4 percent, other rainbow trout; and 5.3 percent, bull trout. Vidergar estimated the number of Kamloops rainbow trout in Lake Pend Oreille at about 15,000 fish with fork length greater than 40 centimeters (16 inches).

Competitive interaction may occur between rainbow and bull trout juveniles for limited food and space, but potential impacts are not known. Watson and Hillman (1997) found that bull trout distribution is negatively correlated with rainbow trout distribution, even in drainages where rainbow trout are native. Pratt and Huston

(1993) report that rainbow trout in the Clark Fork/Pend Oreille drainage seem to use lower reaches of streams occupied by bull trout, while bull trout nursery areas generally lie higher in the watershed. Because bull trout and rainbow trout have coexisted in Lake Pend Oreille tributaries for many decades and because changes in bull trout abundance in the Lightning Creek basin appear to be independent of rainbow trout abundance, the Panhandle Bull Trout Technical Advisory Team (PBTTAT 1998a) did not consider rainbow trout to be a significant threat to bull trout in the Lightning Creek complex. In February 2000, the Idaho Fish and Game Commission took the unusual step of issuing emergency regulation changes for Lake Pend Oreille and the lower Clark Fork River to conserve kokanee salmon and encourage harvest of Kamloops rainbow trout, with the intent to prevent a collapse of the weak kokanee salmon population (IDFG, *in litt*., 2000). This action, if successful in reducing the Kamloops rainbow trout, could benefit bull trout.

In 1925, the U.S. Fish Commission stocked 100,000 lake trout into Lake Pend Oreille and its tributaries (Pratt and Huston 1993), and lake trout may also have migrated downstream of Flathead Lake, where they were introduced 20 years earlier. Lake trout are firmly established in Lake Pend Oreille, but impacts on bull trout populations are not known. A 1997 to 1998 study by the University of Idaho to assess population size of lake trout and other salmonid predators in Lake Pend Oreille indicated that approximately 2,000 lake trout with fork length over 30 centimeters (16 inches) were in Lake Pend Oreille (Vidergar 2000). However, estimates for lake trout harvested from Lake Pend Oreille in 2000, based on more recent creel survey data, were over 4,000, and managers are concerned that lake trout populations are rapidly expanding (Corsi, *in litt.*, 2001). The fisheries managers of the Idaho Department of Fish and Game have proposed experimental lake trout suppression through liberal angler harvest (bag limits on lake trout in Lake Pend Oreille were recently removed) and have also proposed trap netting as one way to protect bull trout and restore the kokanee salmon forage base (Corsi, *in litt.*, 2001). Lake trout may prey opportunistically on juvenile bull trout, but bull trout were found to make up only 1.5 percent of the diet in a sample of 242 lake trout stomachs examined (Vidergar 2000). Kokanee salmon made up 87.4 percent of the lake trout diet, and rainbow trout made up 5.5 percent in that study.

Replacement of bull trout by lake trout has occurred in other lakes where lake trout have been introduced (Donald and Alger 1993). In Lake Pend Oreille, as in Flathead and Priest Lakes, the presence of *Mysis* shrimp (*Mysis relicta*), an important forage item for lake trout, may provide lake trout with an additional competitive advantage.

It is possible that the relative abundance of kokanee salmon in Lake Pend Oreille previously enabled bull trout to compete with lake trout and, therefore, that kokanee abundance helps prevent a rapid decline in the bull trout populations (PBTTAT 1998a). Most lakes where bull trout are declining do not have an abundance of prey species such as kokanee salmon (Bowles *et al.* 1991; Donald and Alger 1993). An introduced species, kokanee salmon are important prey for bull trout, lake trout, and the lake's other top-level predator, Gerrard rainbow trout. Kokanee salmon populations have been in decline since the 1960's, following the construction of Albeni Falls and Cabinet Gorge Dams and the introduction of *Mysis* shrimp. Ongoing investigations by the University of Idaho and the Idaho Department of Fish and Game are examining the impacts of winter drawdown of the lake by Albeni Falls Dam. Currently, the lake is being held at a higher level through the winter to provide more suitable spawning habitat for kokanee salmon. Continued decline of the kokanee salmon population could lead to competition, or more intense competition, among bull trout and other predators and causes concern for the bull trout population, as well for the fishery in general.

The Pack River supports spawning, rearing, and multiple age classes of brook trout. Densities of brook trout are expected to be high in some reaches, but this expectation needs to be verified with updated information. Snorkelers observed large brook trout, up to 46 centimeters (18 inches) long, in middle reaches of the Pack River mainstem (PBTTAT 1998a). Although no genetic work has been done, the presence of larger brook trout could increase the potential for hybridization. Degraded habitat conditions in this stream may give brook trout a competitive advantage over other salmonid species, an advantage described by Fausch (1988) for other streams. Genetics work in the Pend Oreille watershed so far has identified brook trout x bull trout hybrids in Porcupine Creek, and fish believed to be brook trout x bull trout hybrids have been noted in North Fork Grouse Creek (PBTTAT 1998a).

Lake whitefish and Arctic grayling were also stocked into Lake Pend Oreille. Grayling were never documented in catch records, but lake whitefish became established and are still present today. *Mysis* shrimp were planted in Lake Pend Oreille in 1966 by the Idaho Department of Fish and Game to provide additional forage for kokanee salmon in Lake Pend Oreille. *Mysis* shrimp were stocked after fishery managers received favorable reports from British Columbia that kokanee salmon grew rapidly and attained large size in Kootenay Lake by feeding on introduced *Mysis* shrimp. In Lake Pend Oreille, *Mysis* shrimp negatively impact survival of fry of kokanee salmon (PBTTAT 1998a) and may aid the growth and survival of lake trout.

Pratt and Huston (1993) summarized the use of artificially propagated bull trout in the lower Clark Fork/Pend Oreille system. During 1949 and 1950, bull trout eggs were collected from tributaries to the lower Clark Fork River in Montana. The Idaho Department of Fish and Game raised a portion of these eggs in hatcheries at Clark Fork, Montana, and McCall, Idaho. In 1952, approximately 9,700 juvenile fish from the program were released into Spring Creek and the lower Clark Fork River in Idaho. Spring Creek does not currently support bull trout, and the introduction does not appear to have been successful.

In 1966, hatchery-reared Dolly Varden from Alaska were introduced in some tributaries to Lake Pend Oreille (J. Mallet, Idaho Department of Fish and Game, as cited in Pratt and Huston 1993, p. 65–66), but this introduction was not believed to be successful (PBTTAT 1998a). Additional introductions from brood stock originating from the Alaska fish probably occurred into the mid-1970's. To date, genetic evaluations have not shown a Dolly Varden influence on pure bull trout stocks in Lake Pend Oreille (Pratt and Huston 1993; Spruell and Allendorf 1998). More recently (1991), a limited number of bull trout from the lower Clark Fork River and Gold Creek were artificially spawned. Progeny from these fish were marked with a fin clip and released in 1993 into mountain lakes in the Pend Oreille basin and into Lake Pend Oreille (PBTTAT 1998a). The success of these programs is unknown because no marked fish have been recovered, though not all assessments have been completed. Currently, there is no stocking of hatchery-reared bull trout in the Pend Oreille drainage.

A kokanee salmon trap on Sullivan Springs is operated by the Idaho Department of Fish and Game as an egg collection station for kokanee salmon. The trap consists of two picket weirs isolating a section of stream about 14 meters (45 feet) long. In some years, bull trout spawn in this area before the weir is installed (in 1997, three redds were counted in the trap area). In November and December, thousands of kokanee salmon enter the trap, where they are collected and spawned. Disturbance or loss of bull trout redds in the trap area may occur as a result of activity associated with kokanee salmon spawning (PBTTAT 1998a). In 1999, the Idaho Department of Fish and Game began implementing corrective measures.

Lake Pend Oreille supports a significant fishery. In 1991, anglers expended an estimated 465,000 hours fishing the lake, with approximately 65 percent of the effort targeting trout and 35 percent targeting kokanee salmon (PBTTAT 1998a). Bull trout comprised a relatively small percentage of the trout harvest, but provided trophy-sized fish. The world record bull trout, weighing 14.5 kilograms (32 pounds) was taken from Lake Pend Oreille in 1949. The portions of the lake that are within a 91-meter (100-yard) radius of the mouths of tributary streams have the same seasons and regulations as the streams to provide additional protection to bull trout. On January 1, 1996, the Idaho Department of Fish and Game closed Lake Pend Oreille and the Clark Fork River to harvest of bull trout (PBTTAT 1998a). Harvest of bull trout had been closed in all other tributary streams in Lake Pend Oreille in 1964. Although seasons for harvest have been closed, misidentification of bull trout, often as brook trout or lake trout, can result in incidental harvest (Schmetterling and Long 1999).

Poaching has long been recognized as a problem in the lower Clark Fork/Pend Oreille basin and remains a problem in some watersheds, with peak activity occurring in July, August, and September when large fish are in tributaries and are easily taken (Long 1997). Bull trout spawners from Lake Pend Oreille are particularly vulnerable to poaching because they often enter small tributary streams several months prior to spawning and congregate in pools. In some watersheds, such as Pack River and Lightning Creek, extensive road systems provide easy access to prime spawning areas (PBTTAT 1998a). Poaching is known to occur in Gold Creek as individuals generally target the same pools each year.

Hooking mortality from catch-and-release fishing is most likely to occur in Lake Pend Oreille during the summer, when surface temperatures are warm and fish are caught from deeper water. Past creel surveys have shown that catch rates and catch of bull trout are typically highest in late spring and early fall, with declines during mid-summer. Increased interest in lake trout fishing during mid-summer may increase the number of bull trout that are caught and subjected to potential hooking mortality. Currently, there is no estimate of hooking mortality for bull trout caught from the lake.

Flathead Recovery Subunit

In Flathead Lake, bull trout coexist with 23 other fish species, only 10 of which are native (MBTSG 1995c). The introduced fish species found in the Flathead River basin include Yellowstone cutthroat trout, brook trout, brown trout, rainbow trout, lake trout, Arctic grayling, kokanee salmon, lake whitefish, largemouth bass, northern pike, yellow perch, pumpkinseed, brook stickleback, central mudminnow, and black bullhead. Individual walleye, apparently from illegal transplants, have been found in the Flathead River drainage. To date, however, walleye are not known to have established reproducing populations. *Mysis relicta* occurs, as an introduced species, throughout the drainage.

Brook trout pose a threat to bull trout in some tributaries of the Middle Fork Flathead River, although hybridization has not been documented to date. Brook trout have not been found in tributaries of North Fork Flathead River (MBTSG 1995c).

Because of competition and hybridization, the introduced species that presents the greatest existing risk to bull trout in the Swan River drainage is the brook trout (MBTSG 1996b). Recent genetic data (Kanda *et al.* 1994) and observations from Squeezer Creek within the Swan River drainage (Kitano *et al.* 1994) indicate that large, spawning, migratory bull trout mate with smaller brook trout, producing hybrid offspring. Hybrids have been observed in several of the primary bull trout nursery streams. Hybridized offspring are typically sterile (Leary *et al.* 1983).

Brook trout are widely dispersed throughout the Swan River drainage. Leathe and Enk (1985) reported brook trout presence in 40 of 74 tributary stream reaches surveyed. Brook trout were the most abundant species in low-gradient reaches.

Degraded habitat conditions appear to favor brook trout over westslope cutthroat trout in stream reaches where channel gradient is 6 percent or less (Leathe and Enk 1985). There are no bull trout streams in the Swan River drainage that do not contain resident brook trout populations.

In 1999, a reproducing population of brown trout was documented in the Flathead River basin upstream of Kerr Dam for the first time. At least two year classes of naturally produced juvenile fish and several large adults were electrofished from a short reach of Mill Creek, a spring-fed tributary to the Flathead River just upstream of Flathead Lake. Since Creston National Fish Hatchery is located on the upper end of Mill Creek, the likely source of the brown trout is escapement from a population held at the hatchery in the early 1980's (Leary 2000). State and Federal fishery managers are attempting control actions to eradicate this population before it spreads.

Lake trout were introduced into Flathead Lake in 1905 (Spencer *et al.* 1991) and produced a limited, but trophy fishery for most of the 20th century. However, with the establishment of *Mysis* shrimp in Flathead Lake, first discovered in 1981, lake trout populations underwent a dramatic expansion. Estimated angler harvest of lake trout currently exceeds 40,000 fish annually (MFWP/CSKT 2000), and the population number is much higher, though not currently quantified.

With the increase in the lake trout population, subadult lake trout became common in the river systems connected to Flathead Lake. Their presence has been documented as far upstream as Bear Creek on the Middle Fork Flathead River (160 kilometers [100 miles] upstream of the lake) and beyond the Canadian border on the North Fork Flathead River (183 kilometers [114 miles] upstream of the lake). One lake trout with a radio tag traveled up and down the North Fork Flathead River, forayed into the Middle Fork Flathead River drainage, and then swam down the mainstem Flathead River toward Flathead Lake before being caught by an angler, all within a period of a few months (Muhlfeld *et al.* 2000). In an assessment of the seasonal distribution and movement of native and nonnative fishes in the Flathead River system upstream of Flathead Lake, Muhlfeld *et al.* (2000) documented spatial and temporal overlap of juvenile bull trout and westslope cutthroat trout with nonnative lake trout and northern pike. They concluded that this overlap may increase

the probability of predation on the native salmonids migrating downstream to Flathead Lake. Muhlfeld *et al.* (2000) also suggest that lake trout migration in the Flathead River system is at least partially a temperature-induced response, with the river habitat not preferred as water temperatures exceed 10 degrees Celsius (50 degrees Fahrenheit) and probably unsuitable as temperatures approach 15 dgrees Celsius (59 degrees Fahrenheit).

Lake trout have been documented as preying on young bull trout and cutthroat in Flathead Lake. Deleray *et al.* (1999) examined 449 lake trout stomachs collected in 1996. Combined diet information indicated that 99 percent of the diet (by weight) was fish and that over three-fourths of the biomass consumed was lake whitefish. Insects, *Mysis* shrimp, and other noninvertebrates comprised only 1 percent of the diet, but made up a higher percentage of the diet in small lake trout (under 500 millimeters [20 inches]). Information on predator food habits was also collected for lake trout (and northern pikeminnow) in the Flathead River (Zollweg 1998). All of these studies indicate a low incidence of trout and char in lake trout diets. However, because of their high abundance, predator populations probably impose a significant source of mortality for species such as bull trout and westslope cutthroat trout (Deleray *et al.* 1999). Additional lake trout food habits data are being analyzed.

Of 27 natural lakes in the Flathead Recovery Subunit known to have contained native populations of bull trout, 11 (41 percent) now contain lake trout (Fredenberg 2000). Three of these lake trout populations resulted from government stocking programs (Flathead Lake in 1905, Whitefish Lake in 1941, Tally Lake in 1985), but the rest apparently resulted from unauthorized stocking or natural invasion. Lake trout have now been detected or reported in each of the watershed's 8 natural lakes that cover more than 404 surface hectares (1,000 surface acres); lake trout inhabit lentic habitat that covers over 57,500 total surface hectares (142,000 acres) (Fredenberg 2000). The remaining lakes, or the bull trout lakes that are not believed to contain lake trout, together occupy only 1,800 surface hectares (4,500 surface acres).

The introduction of lake trout is suspected as the primary factor contributing to the decline of bull trout in several lakes in Glacier National Park (*e.g.*, McDonald, Kintla, Bowman, and Logging Lakes) (Fredenberg 2000). Similarly, the introduction

of lake trout and/or brook trout is suspected of playing a role in the extirpation of bull trout from seven lakes in southern Canada (Donald and Stelfox 1997).

Donald and Alger (1993), in their study of 34 Rocky Mountain lakes in Montana, Alberta, and British Columbia, concluded that lake trout can limit the distribution and abundance of bull trout in mountain lakes. They stated that lacustrine populations of bull trout usually cannot be maintained if lake trout are introduced. Evidence that lake trout is the dominant species include 1) displacement of indigenous bull trout populations by introduced lake trout, 2) unsuccessful "natural" colonization by bull trout of suitable low-elevation lakes that support lake trout, and 3) relatively high mortality of sympatric bull trout populations. Bull trout and lake trout exhibited substantial niche overlap with respect to food utilization and their growth, an overlap suggesting that competition may contribute to the disjunct distribution of these species (Donald and Alger 1993).

A scientific advisory team that was convened in 1997 by Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks and the Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes concluded that "Lake trout have come to dominate the fish community of Flathead Lake since the introduction of the opossum shrimp, and now represent the greatest obstacle to restoring the bull trout population. The panel concluded that the lake trout population has to be reduced by 70 to 90 percent from present levels if bull trout are to return to population levels of the 1980's " (McIntyre 1998). In spring 2000, a citizens' advisory committee was convened by Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks and the Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes to recommend management alternatives for Flathead Lake and the Flathead River system. Using that panel's recommendations and other input, the management agencies adopted a Flathead Lake and River Fisheries Co-Management Plan in November 2000. The goals of the 10-year plan are to 1) increase and protect native trout populations, 2) maintain a viable recreational/subsistence fishery, and 3) protect habitat and water quality (MFWP/CSKT 2000). Implementation of strategies identified in the plan is now underway.

Mysis shrimp were stocked by Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks in Whitefish, Tally, and Ashley Lakes in the Flathead drainage in 1968 and in Swan and Holland Lakes in the Swan drainage in 1975 (Rumsey 1988). The shrimp apparently drifted

downstream into Flathead Lake from one or more of these sources and were first collected there in fall 1981 (Leathe and Graham 1982). The inadvertent introduction of these shrimp into Flathead Lake resulted in major changes in the lake's food web, including the abrupt loss of kokanee salmon, and is believed to have facilitated the increase in lake trout numbers (Spencer *et al.* 1991).

The presence of *Mysis* shrimp generally benefits deep-dwelling fish species by providing a food source, but the shrimp may impact planktivorous fish by reducing the available crustacean zooplankton (Nesler and Bergersen 1991). Many lakes with established *Mysis* shrimp populations have experienced a decline or, in some cases, complete loss of kokanee salmon. However, kokanee salmon have persisted in Swan Lake in spite of the presence of *Mysis* shrimp. Some kokanee salmon use *Mysis* shrimp as a food source, particularly during winter months (MBTSG 1996b). Bull trout in Swan Lake also use *Mysis* shrimp as a significant source of food, and the shrimp may result in improved growth and survival of subadults. Stomach samples from bull trout collected by gill-netting in 1988 and 1995 showed that, in both years, 67 percent of samples with food present contained *Mysis* shrimp (MBTSG 1996b). At this time, the presence of *Mysis* shrimp in Swan Lake does not appear to be detrimental to bull trout and may, in fact, benefit bull trout by providing an important source of food.

It is noteworthy that Swan Lake does not have an established lake trout population, although a single specimen was caught from the river upstream of Swan Lake in 1998 and two more adult-sized fish were verified from the lake in 1999 (Fredenberg, *in litt*., 1999). Additional specimens have since been caught. The Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group reported that the greatest future threat to maintaining the bull trout populations of Swan Lake was the potential introduction of lake trout (MBTSG 1996b). Swan Lake appears to have suitable habitat for lake trout, and the food web, including abundant *Mysis* shrimp and kokanee salmon food sources, may provide the opportunity for the lake trout population to expand rapidly. Swan Lake already contains populations of illegally introduced northern pike, yellow perch, largemouth bass, brook stickleback, and central mudminnow. The threat of lake trout to the integrity of the strongest remaining natural bull trout population in Montana should not be underestimated.

Of the other introduced species established in the Flathead Recovery Subunit, the northern pike is the one of most concern, and it is now widely distributed. A single illegal introduction of pike into Echo Lake in the late 1960's led to widespread illegal introductions throughout northwest Montana. An evaluation of the ecology and food habits of pike in the Flathead River upstream of Flathead Lake is currently underway (Muhlfeld *et al.* 2000). Preliminary results show that pike are fairly mobile, with some individuals moving seasonally and temporally between sloughs and throughout the system (MFWP/CSKT 2000). Biologists are attempting to collect a representative set of stomach samples to further assess the potential interaction of this species with salmonids. Preliminary analysis of pike stomachs from the Flathead River and associated sloughs has found that bull trout may be seasonally significant in the diet, comprising as much as 84 percent of the biomass in one sample period (Muhlfeld, *in litt.*, 2001). Pike and lake trout have both become well established in the Stillwater Lakes, providing little hope for bull trout recovery in those lakes, although a bull trout population is hanging on in the river upstream. Pike are established in Flathead, Tally, Whitefish, and Swan Lakes. Impacts of pike in these systems are unknown.

Hatchery stocking with nonnative fish has been extensive in lakes throughout the Swan River drainage (MBTSG 1996b). From the mid-1920's through the mid-1980's, "undesignated" cutthroat trout (probably Yellowstone cutthroat) were planted in Swan, Holland, and Lindbergh Lakes. Rainbow trout were also introduced in these three lakes, beginning in the mid-1920's. After 1966, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks discontinued these plants. Beginning in the late 1980's, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks stocked pure-strain westslope cutthroat trout in these three large lakes. Although not known to directly threaten bull trout, the plants of Yellowstone cutthroat and rainbow trout have adversely affected native cutthroat trout and may have had indirect or unknown impacts on bull trout (MBTSG 1996b).

Similar stocking practices occurred in the lakes of Glacier National Park. The emphasis on producing a fishery to attract anglers was a driving force of the park management in the early days. And, in fact, Creston National Fish Hatchery, built in 1939 and 1940, was originally a National Park Service facility, and the enabling legislation for the hatchery required that all fish reared there be stocked in waters of

Glacier National Park (Fredenberg 1997). In 1944, the hatchery was transferred to the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

Kokanee salmon stocking in Lindbergh Lake began in 1944, and this program continues today (MBTSG 1996b). Coho salmon were planted in Lindbergh Lake in 1948. Kokanee salmon were first planted in Holland Lake in 1951. Because natural reproduction of kokanee salmon in the lake is limited, this fishery is still maintained by stocking of the salmon. Swan Lake never received kokanee salmon plants, but a substantial shoreline spawning population developed, probably due to downstream drift from Lindbergh and/or Holland Lakes. Also, kokanee salmon from Flathead Lake may have moved upstream to Swan Lake over the Bigfork Dam fish ladder after 1959.

Nearly 80 high mountain lakes exist in the Swan River drainage (MBTSG 1996b). Many of these lakes have been stocked with rainbow and/or cutthroat trout, both Yellowstone and westslope. Currently, only westslope cutthroat trout are stocked. Twenty-five other valley floor lakes in the Swan River drainage are managed fisheries, with most being stocked. In lakes with outlets to the river, management emphasis is directed to native westslope cutthroat trout. In some isolated water bodies or closed basins, rainbow trout have been, and may continue to be, stocked.

Stocking of fish in the Swan River and its tributaries has also been extensive (MBTSG 1996b). Brook trout were the earliest introductions, beginning in 1926 and extending until 1950. Although only six tributaries were known to have been stocked during that period, brook trout are now widely distributed. Cutthroat and rainbow trout were also stocked into tributary streams, and rainbow trout stocking also occurred directly in the Swan River. After 1968, the stocking of tributaries was largely discontinued.

Hungry Horse Dam, which is an isolating mechanism for the watershed upstream of it, could be considered a positive contribution to the fishery resource because of preventing the natural spread of introduced species upstream (MBTSG 1995d). At the present time, only a few small populations of rainbow trout, Yellowstone cutthroat trout, hybrid cutthroat trout, and Arctic grayling exist in the

South Fork Flathead River watershed. In the future, this barrier could become even more valuable as introduced species of fish continue to disperse throughout the mainstem Flathead River drainage. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks has made a commitment to manage the South Fork Flathead River and Hungry Horse Reservoir for native species (MFWP 1997b)

The problems created for native species by illegal fish introductions in the Flathead River basin are increasingly severe (MBTSG 1995c). These illegal introductions are not subjected to any environmental analysis, are almost always detrimental to native species, generally involve warmwater species (bass, perch, pike, and walleye) and/or nongame species (*e.g.*, minnows and bullheads), and are usually irreversible. In part, agency stocking efforts of the past have contributed to this problem of introduced species by providing closer sources of many of these species for transplant stock. This problem has been manifested mainly in lakes, perhaps because introductions in lakes have been more successful than those elsewhere, and is currently out of control in the Flathead River basin. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks has documented 220 illegal introductions in the northwest portion of the State that involve 122 different waters, with most of the introductions occurring in the past 20 years. Despite stepped-up educational and enforcement efforts, the problem has only worsened (Vashro, *in litt.*, 2000).

Flathead Lake and the Flathead River receive substantial angling pressure. Approximately 47,000 to 53,000 angler days per year are expended on the lake (Evarts *et al.* 1994, MFWP 2000a), and an estimated 31,223 angler days were spent in 1999 on the mainstem Flathead River upstream of the lake (MFWP 2000a). In addition, an estimated 5,352 angler days were spent in 1999 on the Middle Fork Flathead River and 6,590 angler days on the North Fork Flathead River (MFWP 2000a). Recent trends in angler use on the Flathead River system have been relatively stable (MFWP 2000a) as have recent use trends for the Flathead Lake fishery since a decline in use followed the collapse of the kokanee salmon fishery in the late 1980's (Evarts *et al.* 1994).

In 1999, anglers also expended an estimated 7,568 days fishing Hungry Horse Reservoir and 11,488 days fishing the South Fork Flathead River (MFWP 2000a).

Estimated angling pressure on Swan Lake in 1999 was 12,716 angler days (MFWP 2000a). On the Swan River, anglers expended an estimated 16,319 angler days in 1999 (MFWP 2000a).

Since at least the 1950's, fisheries management programs in the Flathead River basin have attempted to protect native species (bull trout and westslope cutthroat) (MBTSG 1995c). Despite those attempts, native populations have decreased, resulting in increasingly restrictive angling regulations. A collateral rise in populations of introduced species (particularly lake trout and northern pike) led to a shift in angler support toward those species. These events created a dilemma within the regulatory environment, which in recent times has attempted to provide quality angling opportunities for both native and introduced species—a difficult challenge.

In the past, legal angler harvest of bull trout throughout the Flathead River basin was significant. Harvest and escapement figures in 1981 suggest that anglers may have taken up to 40 percent of the adult bull trout that entered the river that year (Fraley *et al.* 1989).

Angling regulations for bull trout in the Flathead River basin have been gradually tightened over the past 45 years (MBTSG 1995c). The earliest regulations allowed an aggregate limit of 15 trout, but imposed a minimum size limit of 46 centimeters (18 inches) for bull trout. Spawning stream closures first occurred in 1953 in the North Fork Flathead River and in 1962 in the Middle Fork Flathead River. In 1985, bull trout were assigned a separate limit of one fish and the minimum length was dropped.

Since July 6, 1992, it has been illegal to “take and/or intentionally fish for bull trout” (MFWP, *in litt*., 2000) throughout northwest Montana. In addition, all the primary spawning streams and the rivers around their mouths are closed to fishing entirely. There is one current exception to the no-take regulation: Swan Lake, with a daily limit of one fish. The Swan River and tributaries are closed to fishing for bull trout. Bull trout management objectives for Swan Lake are focused on maintaining the local populations at a stable level (MBTSG 1996b). According to a Swan Lake creel survey conducted in 1983 to 1984, bull trout were the third most abundant fish species harvested. Creeled bull trout averaged 46 centimeters (18 inches) long (Leathe and Enk 1985). The total

estimated harvest was 739 bull trout (Leathe and Enk 1985). A more recent survey, conducted in 1995, indicated an estimated 482 bull trout were harvested (Rumsey and Werner 1997). This level of harvest has not deterred an increasing trend in population of bull trout in Swan Lake, and the fishery has remained open; this lake is the only one under Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks jurisdiction where fishing for bull trout is legal.

Hungry Horse Reservoir remained open to bull trout harvest until March 1995, when it was closed due to concern about the impact of deep reservoir drawdowns on the fish community. The Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group estimated that roughly 100 to 250 bull trout were harvested annually in Hungry Horse Reservoir between 1985 and 1993 (MBTSG 1995d). The most recent estimate of harvest was that anglers removed less than 10 percent of the adult population of bull trout from the reservoir in 1993 (MBTSG 1995d). Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks has interpreted the data as indicating a stable trend in bull trout numbers in the South Fork Flathead River since the dam was built in the 1950's, and the agency has opened discussions with the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service to explore options for reopening the fishery to angling, with the possibility of allowing some controlled harvest (MFWP 2000b). The potential for illegal introduction by anglers wishing to supplement their potential harvest remains a major concern in this drainage (MBTSG 1995d).

With increasing fishing pressure, some hooking mortality is inevitable, as well as problems with identifying fish that are caught (*i.e.*, mistaking bull trout for lake trout, brook trout, or other species). Illegal harvest of bull trout in northwest Montana has been an ongoing problem for at least 100 years. After Long (1997) interviewed poachers in northwest Montana to learn about their fishing habits and success rate, he estimated that, on average, 22 bull trout were killed per week per poacher during 3 months, July through September. Of the 9 poachers interviewed, 7 felt that poaching could have a major impact on reducing bull trout numbers. The numbers of fish harvested per poacher were much higher than expected, pointing out the danger that illegal harvest posed to local bull trout populations, especially because of the species' declining status (Long 1997). In response to this information, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks increased enforcement efforts, and penalties for illegal harvest of bull trout were raised.

Risks to bull trout from biological sampling have been minimal in past years, but may increase as more research and management activities occur. The number of research projects is increasing, and some projects involve invasive procedures. Risk due to electrofishing injury is unquantified for bull trout, but evidence suggests that most large trout are susceptible to electrofishing injury. As a result of research by the Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks on the impact of electrofishing on fish, electrofishing techniques and equipment have been modified to minimize that risk. Also, a Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks policy limits the use of electrofishing in waters that contain species of concern.

Priest Recovery Subunit

Bull trout are the only char species native to Priest Lake and the Priest River drainage. Brook trout are widely distributed throughout much of the historical range of bull trout in the Priest River watershed, including portions of nearly all spawning and rearing streams (PBTTAT 1998b). Lake trout are dispersed throughout the lakes, the Thorofare, and occasionally in the lower Priest River. Brown trout also occur in the lower Priest River and the East River.

Brook trout populations appear to be increasing in the system, particularly in tributaries on the west side of Priest Lake and the Upper Priest River. The tributaries west of Priest Lake have high sediment loads (due partially to geology) and generally fewer bull trout (PBTTAT 1998b). Finclips from 118 bull trout that were collected during 1997 to 1999 in the Upper Priest River drainage, including the lake and eight tributaries, are awaiting analysis to determine whether hybridization with brook trout is occurring and to assess the genetic attributes of the population(s) (Fredericks and Venard 2000).

Lake trout were introduced into Priest Lake by the U.S. Fish Commission in 1925. With the introduction of *Mysis* shrimp in the 1960's, the population expanded dramatically, all but eliminating kokanee salmon and bull trout from the lake by the early 1980's. Fishery managers attempted a variety of methods to restore a diverse fishery, including stocking nonnative rainbow trout and Yellowstone cutthroat and producing westslope cutthroat in net pens, but none of the efforts yielded adequate returns to the fishery to justify continuing the programs. Lake trout now provide the only significant fishery in Priest Lake, and bull trout have been reduced to remnant status. Regulations

for lake trout allow a two-fish limit for any size fish. There is some indication that the lake trout population in Priest Lake is expanding, including the fact that they are pioneering upstream into new waters (PBTTAT 1998b).

Lake trout have been present in Upper Priest Lake for over a decade, but have increased at an alarming rate during recent years (PBTTAT 1998b). *Mysis* shrimp are present in both lakes, having been introduced in the 1960's. In 1997, the Idaho Department of Fish and Game conducted an intensive survey in Upper Priest Lake to assess lake trout population and bull trout abundance and to evaluate the feasibility of removing lake trout (Fredericks 1999). This survey confirmed the presence of a well-established lake trout population. The size distribution of lake trout depicted a relatively young and expanding population. The collection of numerous juvenile lake trout suggested that they are reproducing successfully in Upper Priest Lake (Fredericks 1999). Movement of sonic- and spaghetti-tagged lake trout demonstrated that migration between Upper Priest Lake and Priest Lake is common.

In 1998, the Idaho Department of Fish and Game removed 912 lake trout from Upper Priest Lake by gill-netting (Fredericks and Venard 2000). In 1999, an additional 321 lake trout were removed. Ratios of bull trout to lake trout were similar in both years (about 5:100). However, return rates of tagged fish provided a clear indication that interchange of lake trout between the two lakes is common and that the upper lake cannot be treated as a closed system. Lake trout reduction in Upper Priest Lake is the most viable option for protecting and restoring the Upper Priest Lake bull trout population, but such reduction is unlikely to succeed unless a method can be established to control lake trout immigration through the Thorofare. Initial indications are that lake trout move through the area primarily at night, and mostly in the fall, although winter and spring periods were not sampled. Options to reduce lake trout movement are complicated by the strong public sentiment against obstructing free boat passage between the lakes. Further study will focus on seasonal and 24-hour use patterns of the Thorofare by lake trout and native fish species, with an eye toward developing alternatives to control fish migration (Fredericks and Venard 2000). An alternative strategy of suppressing lake trout in Priest Lake to reduce pioneering migrations into Upper Priest Lake is also being examined.

Upper Priest Lake has been managed as a catch-and-release fishery since 1994, with barbless hooks required and no bait allowed. Much of the fishing in the lake is associated with inexperienced anglers, who may be less able to identify bull trout and therefore more likely to keep bull trout than more experienced fishermen may be. Illegal harvest is an issue in the Priest River watershed, but the impact is largely unquantified.

Current management direction is to continue the existing lake trout fishery in Priest Lake and to attempt to maintain Upper Priest Lake as a refuge for native species. However, the latter lake is being seriously compromised by the increasing brook trout populations and the influx of lake trout. The current adult population of bull trout in Upper Priest Lake is estimated to be fewer than 200 fish (Corsi, *in litt.*, 2001). The existing studies should identify some of the biological factors associated with the feasibility of controlling lake trout, and the Idaho Department of Fish and Game has submitted a proposal to the Bonneville Power Administration for funding of a lake trout removal program, which would be combined with efforts to develop a migration barrier in the Thorofare (Corsi, *in litt.*, 2001).

If bull trout in Upper Priest Lake can be protected and restored, options for eventually restoring bull trout in Priest Lake may remain viable. But if bull trout are extirpated in Upper Priest Lake, successfully restoring the species to this core area is doubtful. The recently approved Idaho Department of Fish and Game five-year fisheries management plan for the Pend Oreille River drainage (including the Priest Lakes system) has an objective of restoring a fishable population of bull trout in Upper Priest Lake, an objective to be accomplished by programs to disrupt lake trout immigration through the Thorofare and to actively suppress lake trout. The Idaho Department of Fish and Game also proposes a significant reduction in lake trout in main Priest Lake with an objective of restoring a "more traditional fishery" based on native species, primarily bull trout and westslope cutthroat trout, with a yield fishery for kokanee salmon (IDFG 2001).

Summary (Fisheries Management)

Of all the threats to bull trout recovery, the expanding presence of nonnative species may prove to be the most intractable. In particular, expansion of congeneric lake trout and brook trout is of greatest concern for bull trout recovery in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. Scientists currently have limited tools available to deal with these

intruders, and, in many cases, there is strong public opposition to controlling or eliminating other salmonids that provide sport fisheries. The impact of introductions of nonnative species, which are essentially "biological pollutants," in most cases may be permanent. While the status of stream habitat for bull trout in many watersheds throughout the Recovery Unit has had an improving trend, the effects of nonnative species introductions, particularly in large lakes, may permanently reduce the capacity of these waters to support bull trout. This issue ranks as one of the highest priorities for expenditure of research, education, and enforcement dollars. Angling regulations in most waters have gone as far as they can to protect native species, short of completely closing angling to further reduce the take that occurs from hooking mortality and species misidentification. A key to successful bull trout restoration is educating both anglers and the nonangling public about the values of native species. Anglers and the management agencies must be convinced to sacrifice short-term satisfaction for long-term gains to native species populations. Intact native fish ecosystems are increasingly rare, and we must allocate substantial resources to protecting and restoring those that remain.

Isolation and Habitat Fragmentation

Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

Several elements determine the degree of threat that is posed by the isolation and fragmentation of bull trout habitat. One is the likelihood of catastrophic events occurring, along with the relative frequency, intensity, timing, and location of such catastrophes. We must consider natural calamities such as fire, flood, and landslides (which can be exacerbated by mans activities), as well as man-caused catastrophes such as pollution or introduction of exotic diseases or organisms. For example, whirling disease has recently been introduced to numerous waters where bull trout are found. While not believed to pose an immediate threat to bull trout populations, whirling disease is spreading in streams such as the Blackfoot River (Pierce and Podner 2000), with uncertain effects. The population level consequences to bull trout of any catastrophe will depend on the extent and quality of the habitat; the distribution, abundance, and genetic variability of the population (adaptability); and other factors. Therefore, the larger and more interconnected the system is, the more likely that the bull trout population will survive catastrophic events or that it will be able to recolonize from other sources

following a catastrophe. For these reasons, this recovery plan places a high level of importance on the interconnectivity of bull trout populations.

In the upper Clark Fork and Bitterroot River drainages, fire, flood and drought are more likely to occur than landslides or rain-on-snow events. The intense fire season of 2000 burned a substantial portion of the upper Bitterroot River drainage. "Rain-on-snow" is a common term used to describe cloudy weather periods when warm winds and rain combine to produce rapid snowmelt. These events generally occur during early to mid-winter periods. Human activities have increased the chances of some of these events occurring. However, these events are of concern to bull trout recovery primarily because local bull trout populations are fragmented. Even Rock Creek and the Blackfoot River, both of which retain habitat connectivity within their tributaries, are disconnected from the mainstem Clark Fork River and Lake Pend Oreille by Milltown Dam and the series of dams downstream. Under current conditions, if a catastrophic event were to cause a localized or widespread extirpation of populations, the opportunity for the fish to naturally recolonize the habitat from downstream or adjacent watersheds is extremely limited.

Disruption of migratory corridors probably leads to the loss of the migratory life history form (Nelson 1999), and resident stocks living upstream of barriers are at an increased risk of extinction (Rieman and McIntyre 1993). Restoration of the migratory life history form is needed for the long-term persistence of bull trout in many portions of the upper Clark Fork River drainage.

If a local population is small enough, random genetic variation among individuals can lead to long-term declines in fitness, and the local population may go extinct. As a local population is restricted in abundance, or as the variation in its birth rate or survival increases, the predicted mean time to extinction will decrease (Rieman and McIntyre 1993).

The Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group judged that the risk of extirpation is high for local populations of bull trout in the core areas of the upper Clark Fork River basin and in the Bitterroot River basin (MBTSG 1995a, 1995e). This high risk is partly because of habitat isolation and fragmentation and low population abundance. The risks

to bull trout in the Blackfoot River and Rock Creek are somewhat lower because of greater degree of habitat connectivity and the presence of more robust populations (MBTSG 1995b, 1995e). However, bull trout densities are generally low throughout the upper Blackfoot River tributary system (MBTSG 1995b), with the exception of Copper Creek (Pierce and Podner 2000). Telemetry studies have indicated that bull trout from the lower portion of the Blackfoot River drainage did not migrate to the upper drainage and that separate local populations may occur (Swanberg 1997). Even systems that appear to be functionally connected, such as the Blackfoot River system, may have long reaches where poor water quality, degraded habitat, or other factors result in fragmentation of bull trout populations. In 1999, electrofishing of nearly 6.5 kilometers (4 miles) of the upper Blackfoot River (upstream of the North Fork) resulted in the capture of only three bull trout. The status of bull trout in the upper Blackfoot River remains precarious (Pierce and Podner 2000).

Time series monitoring of local bull trout populations on the Bitterroot National Forest began in 1989, too recently to establish long-term trends. However, available evidence indicates that resident and migratory bull trout are probably continuing to decline from their historical distribution and abundance (MBTSG 1995a). Resident fish are now the predominant life form in the Bitterroot River drainage (Nelson 1999). Migratory fish are rare and are only found in upstream portions of the Bitterroot River and in Painted Rocks Reservoir. For resident fish, the risk varies by location. Some local populations in tributaries on the east side of the valley are at lower risk (adults number in the thousands in some of these tributaries), but in the west-side tributaries local populations are at high risk because of low numbers (MBTSG 1995a).

Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit

Prior to hydroelectric development in the lower Clark Fork River drainage, migratory bull trout from the Clark Fork River and Lake Pend Oreille had access to tributary streams both within the lower Clark Fork River drainage and upstream of Thompson Falls Dam (MBTSG 1995e, 1996a, 1996e). Historically, the Clark Fork River was used as a migration corridor between its tributaries and Lake Pend Oreille. Some tributaries within the lower Clark Fork River drainage were used for spawning and rearing. The bull trout biology and life history patterns were probably similar to those

currently documented in other tributaries to Lake Pend Oreille or in the Flathead Lake and River system (Fraley and Shepard 1989).

As dams were built, the migratory corridor for spawning bull trout was blocked. Reservoirs upstream of those dams were filled concurrently with chemical treatments being made for rehabilitation, further compounding the loss of bull trout (MBTSG 1996a). Dam construction isolated migratory fish from Lake Pend Oreille from their natal tributaries and created run-of-the-river reservoir habitats behind Cabinet Gorge, Noxon Rapids, and Thompson Falls Dams. The resulting reservoir habitats are not adequate substitutes for Lake Pend Oreille. Currently, the tributary spawning and rearing habitats still exist (although degraded), but foraging, migrating, and overwintering habitats for migratory adult and subadult fish have changed significantly. Over time, the fish expressing the migratory life history pattern were largely replaced by fish that expressed the resident life form in the tributaries. These changes have occurred over a period dating back nearly a century (Thompson Falls Dam was built in 1913).

The shift from larger, more migratory adfluvial populations to smaller, more isolated migratory and resident populations in the lower Clark Fork River has dramatically increased the likelihood of extirpation for a given stock (MBTSG 1996a). Resident bull trout are typically smaller in body size than their migratory counterparts. Because fecundity is related to size, the migratory strategy can confer an adaptive strategy by increasing reproductive potential. In productive environments, migratory forms should dominate resident forms and should be more resilient and more resistant to environmental variation and stressors (Rieman and McIntyre 1993). In addition, migratory fish are more likely to stray between streams than resident fish, a behavior that provides for genetic exchange and higher chances of refounding locally extinct populations. In their study of demographic requirements for bull trout, Rieman and McIntyre (1993) concluded that maintenance of the migratory life history form is necessary for the long-term survival of the species.

The processes of extinction do not operate independently (MBTSG 1996a). For example, habitat changes that stress or isolate population segments, and therefore reduce abundance, may increase the local population's susceptibility to other risks such as environmental instability or detrimental genetic effects. Low abundance may result in

loss of genetic diversity that could reduce fitness and increase sensitivity to environmental variation.

Underlying geology is an important characteristic that influences fish distribution, abundance, and growth (PBTTAT 1998a). Streams on the northern and eastern side of the lower Clark Fork River basin (watersheds in the Cabinet and Bitterroot Mountains) are primarily within the Belt Series bedrock type, meaning that they are underlain by sedimentary deposits of clay, silt, and sand. Streams draining the Selkirk Mountains are in the Kaniksu batholith and are underlain primarily by granite. The basin was substantially altered by major glacial events in the late Pleistocene period. The present Clark Fork River valley was alternately plugged and scoured by dams of ice and deposited debris from glacial Lake Missoula.

As a result of this history, watersheds in the Cabinet Mountains tend to be prone to rapid runoff events, in-channel erosion, and occasional mass wasting (PBTTAT 1998a). Groundwater seeps and springs are also more prevalent in tributaries draining the Cabinet Mountains north of Lake Pend Oreille. These Belt Series streams tend to be more productive and have much less fine sediment than streams draining the granitic soils of the Selkirk Mountains. Granitic soils tend to be nutrient-poor, and fish growth is typically slower in streams flowing from granitic watersheds. Natural waterfalls are found throughout the stream tributaries of the Clark Fork River basin and prevent use of several tributaries, or portions of tributaries, by migratory fish (PBTTAT 1998a).

Forest fires have had a profound impact on vegetation within the Clark Fork River watersheds during the last century. The forest fire of 1910 burned an estimated 1,215,000 hectares (3,000,000 acres) in western Montana and northern Idaho, with the most severely burned areas on the west-southwest flanks of the Clark Fork River valley (PBTTAT 1998a).

Past management activities and successful wildfire control have caused a shift in forest species composition and stocking levels, predisposing forests to large-scale mortality. Drought conditions can further dispose these forests to increased wildfire incidence and intensity, resulting in significant negative impacts on water quality and fish habitat. At least four large wildfires (during 1910, the 1930's, and 1967), and numerous

smaller fires, have burned in the lower Clark Fork River watershed in this century (PBTTAT 1998a). Large fires have often left riparian vegetation intact along larger streams, and bull trout have persisted in the basin following large wildfires. However, wildfire may result in short- or longer-term loss of, or reductions in, bull trout use of specific streams or stream reaches. Intense fires may increase natural sediment delivery to streams when hydrophobic soils are created. At the same time, fires can significantly increase recruitment of large woody debris to stream channels. Where post-fire salvage operations have removed woody debris from stream-side areas, or created other disturbances such as roads and fire breaks, impacts to fish may be increased (Rieman and Clayton 1997). Although stream habitat in the most severely burned drainages is recovering from past fires, legacy effects from these fires will continue to lower overall productivity for bull trout in some stream reaches.

Flathead Recovery Subunit

In the Flathead Lake, Swan Lake, and South Fork Flathead River (Hungry Horse Reservoir) core areas, the risk to bull trout from environmental instability is reduced due to the predominance of the migratory life form and the relatively connected habitat remaining for these fish (MBTSG 1995c, 1995d, 1996b). If a natural or human-caused event causes bull trout to be eradicated from a small portion of the basin (local populations), other fish from within the drainage may colonize the vacant habitat. For populations in the core areas centered in smaller lakes, the risks from catastrophic events are higher because the isolation factor and restricted habitat make survival and/or recolonization less likely (MBTSG 1995c). In spite of barriers on the South Fork Flathead and Swan River that have cut off nearly half the watershed, the remaining upper Flathead River (North and Middle Forks) is one of the largest drainages (nearly 200,000 hectares [500,000 acres]) that still maintains good interconnections between spawning and rearing habitat and between the foraging, migrating, and overwintering habitat for migratory fish. There are substantial genetic differences between local populations spawning in the North Fork and Middle Fork Flathead River tributaries that should not be disrupted (Kanda *et al.* 1994).

At present, the Swan River drainage provides habitat for one of the strongest collections of local migratory bull trout populations remaining in the State of Montana (MBTSG 1996b). At least 23 tributaries support some level of juvenile bull trout rearing

(Leathe and Enk 1985). Bull trout spawning occurs in at least 10 tributary drainages. Major spawning and rearing areas in the Swan River drainage are highly groundwater influenced, a condition that reduces the risk from drought conditions.

Evidence of past influence from flooding or rain-on-snow events is seen in several drainages of Flathead River basin tributaries, in large part due to the massive flood in 1964. Problems are particularly evident in the Middle Fork Flathead River watershed (MBTSG 1995c). In the Swan River drainage, channel stability problems have been observed during redd counts of bull trout in Goat, Squeezer, Jim, Piper, Cold, Woodward, and Soup Creeks.

Natural water temperatures over 15.5 degrees Celsius (60 degrees Fahrenheit) occur in the late summer and fall downstream of most lakes in the Flathead River basin; these temperatures deter migratory bull trout spawners from entering these systems from downstream (MBTSG 1995c). These conditions probably serve as natural isolating mechanisms, protecting the genetic adaptations of each core area, but also serving to increase the risk of local extirpation, particularly in some of the smaller systems.

Priest Recovery Subunit

Impact from management activities on the Upper Priest River is relatively low. Natural barriers limit the amount of habitat available to migratory bull trout (PBTTAT 1998b). Malcom Creek has a steep cascade about 0.8 kilometer (0.5 mile) upstream of the mouth that is probably a barrier. Rock Creek has a long rock chute barrier about 1.6 kilometers (1 mile) upstream of the mouth. The upper reaches of Cedar Creek also have bedrock chute barriers. Additional natural barriers occur on Trapper, Caribou, Lion, Two Mouth, Granite, North Fork Granite, and Kalispell Creeks and on the Upper Priest River. Dewatering, due to subsurface flow, occurs with regularity on portions of Kalispell Creek (PBTTAT 1998b).

Summary (Isolation and Habitat Fragmentation)

Rieman and Allendorf (2001) used a generalized, age-structured simulation model to relate the effective population size (N_e) to adult numbers under a range of life histories and other conditions characteristic of bull trout populations. They concluded that "cautious long-term management goals for bull trout populations should include an

average of at least 1000 adults spawning each year. Where local populations are too small, managers should seek to conserve a collection of interconnected populations that is at least large enough in total to meet this minimum." This collection of interconnected populations is defined as a core area population. The core area represents our best approximation of a biologically functioning unit.

Rieman and Allendorf (2001) pointed out that few local bull trout populations (indeed, few core areas) support spawner numbers averaging 1,000 or more per year. They noted that populations smaller than 1,000 should not be written off as lost causes, but that those populations should be recognized as facing greater threats associated with small population size and, therefore, as probably requiring more aggressive management and more immediate attention to mitigate those threats (Rieman and Allendorf 2001).

In the Clark Fork Recovery Unit, the risk of core area and local population extirpation from habitat isolation and fragmentation is generally increasing as populations of bull trout decline. Major dams were the catalyst for much of this disruption, and fragmentation has continued at a finer scale because of habitat decline and introductions of nonnative species. While bull trout are present in most historical core areas, there is substantial evidence of extirpation of local populations throughout this recovery unit, and many populations are at levels low enough to seriously reduce the chances of recolonization. The threat from isolation and fragmentation is real, and as more data is gathered, we anticipate gaining a better understanding of how bull trout migrate and interact between patches (Rieman and McIntyre 1995).

CONSERVATION MEASURES

Over the last decade, significant planning efforts to restore and recover bull trout have been initiated, and many on-the-ground activities specifically designed to benefit bull trout and other native salmonids within the Clark Fork Recovery Unit have been implemented. Ultimately, the measure by which these efforts should be judged is the degree to which they have produced positive response in the numbers and security of local bull trout populations. However, because most of these efforts are relatively young and could not be expected to produce measurable population response for several bull trout generations, judging the success of most of those programs at this time is premature. Because most programs have been government-led or funded, and they are most easily summarized by jurisdiction, we depart from the prior format for this section. Following is a brief summary of the existing and ongoing conservation activities.

State of Idaho

The Idaho Department of Fish and Game developed a management plan for bull trout in 1993 (Conley 1993), and the State of Idaho approved a plan for the conservation of bull trout in July 1996 (Batt 1996). The overall approach of the plan is to use existing groups established by Idaho Legislation, that is, watershed advisory groups and basin advisory groups that were formed to strengthen water quality protection and improve compliance with the Clean Water Act through locally developed, site-specific programs.

Lake Pend Oreille was designated as one of 59 key watersheds in the State of Idaho. The Lake Pend Oreille Watershed Advisory Group was one of the first to form, in August 1997. With partial funding provided by Avista Corporation and with the assistance of a consultant, the watershed advisory group progressed rapidly. The Panhandle Bull Trout Technical Advisory Team developed a problem assessment (PBTTAT 1998a), which the watershed advisory group used as the basis for the Lake Pend Oreille Bull Trout Conservation Plan—the first, and only, such plan completed in the State of Idaho (LPOWAG 1999).

The mission statement of the Lake Pend Oreille Bull Trout Conservation Plan is to "[d]evelop and implement a locally accepted conservation plan which will provide for a population of bull trout with long term viability and a harvestable surplus, while

minimizing disruption to the lifestyles and industries of the area's population" (LPOWAG 1999). The plan identifies 12 high-priority watersheds for bull trout and describes a series of restoration actions in each of these watersheds. For each action, a coordinating entity (*i.e.*, responsible party) is designated. Actions are categorized as fisheries management, habitat management, education, enforcement, or monitoring needs.

The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service supports the Lake Pend Oreille Bull Trout Conservation Plan as an excellent road map for the process of bull trout recovery in the greater Lake Pend Oreille watershed and encourages its full implementation. The plan also lists specific measures and activities that have occurred in the various watersheds draining into Lake Pend Oreille to protect and enhance bull trout (LPOWAG 1999). These measures and activities include restrictive angling regulations, scientific studies, educational efforts, riparian and wetland protection, road stabilization and sediment source remediation, and multiple watershed assessments and inventories, to name just a few. It should be noted that these activities are being carried out in a cooperative fashion by a broad group of agencies and private entities, with multiple sources of public and private funding, and not by the State of Idaho alone.

The Priest Lake Bull Trout Watershed Advisory Group also directed the Panhandle Basin Technical Advisory Team to develop a bull trout problem assessment. A draft of that document was prepared in December 1998, but was not completed. The existing draft contains background information but few specific recovery actions (PBTTAT 1998b). The Priest Lake Watershed Advisory Group has not actively met for several years and the entire Basin Advisory Group/Watershed Advisory Group process is currently on hold, pending further direction from the Governor's office.

The Idaho Department of Fish and Game, with section 6 funding from the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, is also conducting an evaluation of the threat from nonnative species (*i.e.*, lake trout and brook trout) in Upper Priest Lake. Recommendations for solutions are being pursued through a number of avenues.

The Idaho Department of Lands has been actively graveling roads that parallel bull trout streams to help minimize sediment delivery. The agency has also adopted a

more stringent standard for stream shading to insure that timber harvest activities near streams will not increase stream temperatures above the preferred range for bull trout and other coldwater salmonids.

State of Montana

Beginning in 1990, the State of Montana initiated several formal bull trout planning activities, increased enforcement efforts on bull trout streams, and stepped up actions for habitat restoration and habitat monitoring. In 1993, the Governor of Montana appointed the Bull Trout Restoration Team to produce a plan that maintains, protects, and increases bull trout populations. The team appointed a scientific group (Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group) to provide the restoration planning effort with technical expertise.

The scientific group wrote 11 basin-specific status reports and 3 technical, peer-reviewed papers about the role of hatcheries (MBTSG 1996d), the suppression of nonnative fish species (MBTSG 1996c), and land management (MBTSG 1998). A draft restoration plan that defined and identified strategies for ensuring the long-term persistence of bull trout in Montana was released for public comments in September 1998 (MBTRT 1998). In June 2000, the final restoration plan was issued (MBTRT 2000). The plan synthesizes the scientific reports and provides recommendations for achieving bull trout restoration in western Montana. It focuses activities on 12 restoration/conservation areas and was designed to complement and be consistent with this recovery plan. The Montana Restoration Plan relies on voluntary actions, promoted by watershed groups, but has no legislative or legal authority beyond existing State law. Implementation of the Montana Restoration Plan has not officially begun; it is expected to mesh with implementation of this recovery plan.

A multitude of habitat restoration projects, such as removing fish passage barriers, screening irrigation diversions, fencing riparian areas, restoring streams, and monitoring habitat have been completed or are underway in Montana (Graham and Clinch, *in litt.*, 1997). Angling regulations have become more restrictive than in the past, brook trout are no longer stocked, and genetic studies are ongoing. As in Idaho, these activities are being carried out in a cooperative fashion by a broad group of State,

Federal, and Tribal agencies and private entities, with multiple sources of public and private funding.

The Blackfoot Challenge is an organization developed by concerned people in the Blackfoot Valley with the purpose of supporting cooperative resource management, helping manage for the future, and keeping the area's desired characteristics. The Challenge is comprised of individuals, landowners, residents, recreationists, special-interest groups, and Federal, State, and local resource management agencies. Participants in the Challenge come together to coordinate efforts, distribute information, and foster open communication. Members of the Challenge have assisted in initiating a number of stream improvement projects. To date, improvement measures for fish habitat, wetlands, and rangeland have been applied, or are in progress, in at least 34 streams. The results of these projects have been substantial localized improvement in water quality and fisheries resources (Pierce and Podner 2000).

In 1999, the State of Montana reached a partial settlement of its Natural Resource Damage Assessment Program lawsuit with Atlantic Richfield Corporation (MDOJ 1999). The settlement decree requires that at least $500,000 of the approximately $130 million settlement be spent on bull trout recovery projects over the next 10 years. In addition, approximately $10 million will be made available annually through competitive grants to restore, replace, rehabilitate, or acquire fish and wildlife habitat that was injured from the mining and smelting activities. An additional allocation of up to $5 million (still under negotiation) will be spent on restoring bull trout habitat. In total, this settlement provides substantial financial resources for restoring bull trout and bull trout habitat in the upper Clark Fork River basin.

The Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group reported that about 724 kilometers (450 miles) of streams in the upper Clark Fork River basin were impaired or partially impaired for beneficial uses (MBTSG 1995e). In April 2000, the Montana Department of Environmental Quality released a revised draft section 303(d) list, which incorporates a different approach to listing impaired water bodies, based upon 1997 legislative amendments to the Montana water quality laws (MDEQ 2000). When finalized, the new section 303(d) list will be more thoroughly documented, but less inclusive, than past lists. The upper Clark Fork River is among the State's highest-priority streams for

incorporating into the total maximum daily load process (MDHES 1994). Although algae and metals continue to affect the mainstem and tributaries in the upper basin, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA 1993) reports slightly improving trends because of stricter standards and clean-up measures.

The objectives of the South Fork Flathead Conservation Agreement —signed in 1997 by Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Bonneville Power Administration, U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, U.S. Forest Service, and Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes—are to 1) ensure proactive involvement in addressing factors affecting bull trout, 2) facilitate interagency communication and coordination, and 3) provide a fishable population of bull trout in the South Fork Flathead River drainage. As monitoring of the bull trout population continues, criteria will be developed to determine the conditions under which a fishing season for bull trout may be reestablished.

Several other significant funding sources for bull trout restoration have been developed in Montana. The Montana Future Fisheries Improvement Program awards approximately $750,000 annually for projects that restore or enhance habitat for wild fish, with preference given to projects that emphasize native species. House Bill 647, passed in the 1999 State Legislature, roughly doubled the annual funding for restoring or enhancing fish habitat, with specific directives to benefit bull trout and cutthroat trout. License agreements from the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission for Cabinet Gorge, Noxon Rapids, and Kerr Dams provide tens of millions of dollars for fisheries restoration, much of which is for bull trout, over the decades the licenses are in effect. The State of Montana also receives approximately $1 million annually from the Bonneville Power Administration, through the Northwest Power Planning Council, for native fish restoration. Collectively, these and other funding sources provide a solid foundation for implementing many of the actions described in this recovery plan.

Federal Activities

Aside from the standard Columbia River basin guidelines for land management, water management, and the Endangered Species Act that apply to Federal actions (see Chapter 1), several significant Federal efforts have had specific implications for bull trout in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. In December, 2000, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service

issued a Biological Opinion for the Federal Columbia Power System (USFWS 2000) (see Chapter 1 for a discussion of the Biological Opinion). The Biological Opinion requires that issues about dam operation for bull trout at the Albeni Falls Dam be adequately addressed.

The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service has negotiated a Habitat Conservation Plan with Plum Creek Timber Company. The Habitat Conservation Plan includes bull trout and other native salmonids occurring on over 688,500 hectares (1.7 million acres) of corporate lands, primarily (over 90 percent) within the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. A Final Environmental Impact Statement was published in September 2000, and the Habitat Conservation Plan was signed in December 2000. Successful implementation of the Habitat Conservation Plan is expected to raise standards for private timberland management activities and, therefore, reduce impacts of future actions and remediate existing problems to the benefit of bull trout.

The diverse land uses and economic activities in the Clark Fork River drainage have led to numerous water quality problems. A century of mining and smelting has left the upper Clark Fork River and some of its tributaries polluted by toxic metals and other chemicals. Overall, metals contamination is most prevalent in the headwater tributaries, Silver Bow Creek, and the lower reaches of Warm Springs Creek (MDHES 1994). The Environmental Protection Agency's National Priority List has listed four Superfund sites in the upper Clark Fork River basin, including the mainstem Clark Fork River from Warm Springs Creek to Milltown Dam. Since 1982, the Environmental Protection Agency, together with other State, Federal, and private entities, has worked to investigate and prescribe clean-up procedures (USEPA 1993).

The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission relicensing process has provided a timely Federal nexus to positively influence bull trout recovery at several major private hydroelectric dams, including Cabinet Gorge, Noxon Rapids, Thompson Falls, Milltown, Kerr, and Bigfork. All but one of these dams have recently been, or currently are, subject to relicensing, and substantial changes in operations as well as major sources of money for recovery activities have been, and are, being negotiated. The Avista Settlement Agreement, for example, for relicensing Noxon Rapids and Cabinet Gorge Dams will provide over $1.25 million dollars per year for 45 years to restore and improve habitat

and fish passage under Washington Water Power's Native Salmonid Restoration Plan (Washington Water Power Company 1998). Funding for portions of this plan are matched by State and Federal agencies.

The Northwest Power Act, in part requiring mitigation for past and present impacts to fish and wildlife from Federal hydropower projects, has directed tens of millions of dollars of Bonneville Power Administration funds to a series of fisheries recovery actions in western Montana and northern Idaho. With the 1998 Endangered Species Act listing of bull trout, a larger proportion of those funds were directed toward actions directly related to recovery of the species.

The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service has established several staff positions in western Montana under the Partners for Fish and Wildlife Program, and these new employees have focused on developing funding opportunities and directing U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service funds toward cooperative habitat restoration, water development, and easement programs to benefit native fish. The benefits of these efforts include the successful program guided by the Blackfoot Challenge.

Native American Tribal Activities

The Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes have taken an active role in conserving and restoring bull trout habitat, particularly in the Flathead and Jocko River drainages. They have been actively involved in the Montana Restoration Plan development and have applied substantial financial resources, such as from Federal Energy Regulatory Commission relicensing of Kerr Dam and from settlements from Atlantic Richfield Corporation, toward restoration of bull trout.

Canadian Government Activities

The Province of British Columbia has dedicated resources to protecting the North Fork Flathead River drainage, including research and management efforts that were helpful in avoiding proposed coal mine developments in the drainage that would have directly threatened bull trout spawning and rearing habitat for adfluvial fish migrating from Flathead Lake. British Columbia has also implemented and enforced stricter angling regulations to accommodate the United States' concerns and continue to cooperate in recovery planning efforts.

STRATEGY FOR RECOVERY

A core area represents the closest approximation of a biologically functioning unit for bull trout. The combination of core habitat (*i.e.*, habitat that could supply all elements for the long-term security of bull trout, including for both spawning and rearing, as well as for foraging, migrating, and overwintering) and a core population (*i.e.*, bull trout inhabiting a core habitat) constitutes the basic core area unit on which to gauge recovery within a recovery unit.

In the Clark Fork Recovery Unit (Table 2), core areas were most easily delineated for adfluvial populations (*e.g.*, typically the lake where adults reside and interconnected watershed upstream). For fluvial or anadromous populations, delineating core areas requires that some judgment calls be made in determining the extent of historical and current connectivity of migratory habitat, while considering natural and manmade barriers, survey and movement data, and genetic analysis. For resident populations, we must consider whether local populations are remnants from previously existing migratory bull trout and whether reconnecting fragmented habitat would restore a migratory core area. Overall, the hierarchy of population units was mutually exclusive both within a level (*e.g.*, core areas did not overlap) and among levels (*e.g.*, a core area did not occur within portions of more than one recovery unit or subunit).

Table 2. List of local populations (in bold) by core area, in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. Streams designated by (mc) are migratory corridors only and are not considered to host their own local population.

RECOVERY UNIT AND SUBUNIT	CORE AREA	LOCAL POPULATION
Clark Fork RU Upper Clark Fork RSU	Clark Fork River Section 1 (Upstream of Milltown Dam)	**Clark Fork River** **Warm Springs Creek** **Racetrack Creek** **Little Blackfoot River** **Flint Creek** **Boulder Creek** **Harvey Creek**
	Rock Creek	**Rock Creek** **Middle Fork Rock Creek** **East Fork Rock Creek** **West Fork Rock Creek** **Ross Fork Rock Creek** **Upper Willow Creek** **Stony Creek** **Wyman Creek** **Hogback Creek** **Cougar Creek** **Wahlquist Creek** **Butte Cabin Creek** **Welcome Creek** **Ranch Creek** **Brewster Creek** **Gilbert Creek**
	Blackfoot River	**Blackfoot River** **Landers Fork** **North Fork Blackfoot River** **Monture Creek** **Cottonwood Creek** **Belmont Creek** **Gold Creek**
	Clearwater River and Clearwater lake chain	**Clearwater River** (upstream of Salmon Lake) **West Fork Clearwater River** **Deer Creek** **Morrell Creek** Owl Creek (mc) **Placid Creek**

RECOVERY UNIT AND SUBUNIT	CORE AREA	LOCAL POPULATION
	Clark Fork River Section 2 (Milltown Dam to Flathead River)	Clark Fork River (mc) **Rattlesnake Creek** **Petty Creek** **Fish Creek** **Trout Creek** **Cedar Creek** **St. Regis River**
	West Fork Bitterroot River	**All tributaries** upstream of Painted Rocks Dam
	Bitterroot River	**West Fork Bitterroot River** (downstream of Painted Rocks) **East Fork Bitterroot River** **Warm Springs Creek** **Bitterroot River** **Sleeping Child Creek** **Skalkaho Creek** **Blodgett Creek** **Fred Burr Creek** **Burnt Fork Creek**
Clark Fork RU Lower Clark Fork RSU	Lower Flathead River	Mission Creek (mc) **Post Creek** (trib. to McDonald Lake) **Mission Creek** (trib. to Mission Reservoir) **Dry Creek** (trib. to Tabor (St. Marys) Res.) **Jocko River** **South Fork Jocko River** **Middle Fork Jocko River** **North Fork Jocko River**
	Clark Fork River Section 3 (Flathead River to Thompson Falls Dam)	Clark Fork River (mc) Thompson River (mc) **Fishtrap Creek** **West Fork Thompson River**
	Noxon Rapids Reservoir	**Prospect Creek** **Graves Creek** **Vermillion River**
	Cabinet Gorge Reservoir	**Rock Creek** **Bull River**

RECOVERY UNIT AND SUBUNIT	CORE AREA	LOCAL POPULATION
	Lake Pend Oreille (LPO)	**Clark Fork River** **Twin Creek** **Lightning Creek** **Rattle Creek** **Wellington Creek** **Porcupine Creek** **East Fork Lightning Creek** **Johnson Creek** (trib. to LPO) **Gold Creek** (trib. to LPO) **North Gold Creek** (trib. to LPO) **Granite Creek** (trib. to LPO) **Trestle Creek** (trib. to LPO) **Pack River** (trib. to LPO) **Grouse Creek** **Priest River** East River (mc) Middle Fork East River (mc) Uleda Creek Tarlac Creek
Clark Fork RU Flathead RSU	Frozen Lake	**Unnamed headwater tributary** (and stream flowing out of Frozen Lake)
	Upper Kintla Lake	**Kintla Creek** (trib. to Upper Kintla Lake)
	Kintla Lake	**Kintla Creek** (trib. to Kintla Lake)
	Akokala Lake	**Akokala Creek** (trib. to Akokala Lake)
	Bowman Lake	**Bowman Creek** (trib. to Bowman Lake)
	Cerulean Lake Quartz Lake Middle Quartz Lake	**Quartz Creek** (trib. to Middle Quartz Lake)
	Lower Quartz Lake	**Quartz Creek** (trib. to Lower Quartz Lake)
	Cyclone Lake	**Cyclone Creek** (entire drainage)
	Logging Lake	**Logging Creek** (trib. to Logging Lake)
	Trout Lake	**Camas Creek** (trib. to Trout Lake)
	Arrow Lake	**Camas Creek** (trib. to Arrow Lake)
	Isabel Lake(s)	**Park Creek** (trib. to Lower Isabel Lake)
	Harrison Lake	**Harrison Creek** (trib. to Harrison Lake)
	Lincoln Lake	**Lincoln Creek** (trib. to Lincoln Lake)

RECOVERY UNIT AND SUBUNIT	CORE AREA	LOCAL POPULATION
	Lake McDonald	**McDonald Creek** (trib. to Lake McDonald)
	Doctor Lake	**Doctor Creek** (trib. to Doctor Lake)
	Big Salmon Lake	**Big Salmon Creek** (trib. to Big Salmon Lake)
	Hungry Horse Reservoir	South Fork Flathead River (mc) **Danaher Creek** **Youngs Creek** **Gordon Creek** **White River** **Little Salmon Creek** **Bunker Creek** **Spotted Bear River** **Sullivan Creek** (trib. Hungry Horse Res.) **Wheeler Creek** (trib. H. Horse Res.) **Wounded Buck Creek** (trib. H. Horse Res.)
	Upper Stillwater Lake	**Stillwater River** (trib. to Upper Stillwater Lake)
	Whitefish Lake	**Swift Creek** (trib. to Whitefish Lake)
	Upper Whitefish Lake	**East Fork Swift Creek** (trib. and downstream)
	Lindbergh Lake	**Swan River** (trib. to Lindbergh Lake)
	Holland Lake	**Holland Creek** (trib. to Holland Lake)
	Swan Lake	Swan River (mc) **Elk Creek** **Cold Creek** **Jim Creek** **Piper Creek** **Lion Creek** **Goat Creek** **Woodward Creek** **Soup Creek** **Lost Creek**

RECOVERY UNIT AND SUBUNIT	CORE AREA	LOCAL POPULATION
	Flathead Lake	Flathead River (mc) **North Fork Flathead River** (U.S. / B.C.) **Howell Creek** (B. C.) **Kishinehn Creek** (B. C.) **Trail Creek** **Whale Creek** **Red Meadow Creek** **Coal Creek** **Big Creek** Middle Fork Flathead River (mc) **Strawberry Creek** (includes Trail) **Bowl Creek** **Clack Creek** **Schafer Creek** (includes Dolly Varden) **Morrison Creek** (Includes Lodgepole) **Granite Creek** **Long Creek** **Bear Creek** **Ole Creek** **Park Creek** **Nyack Creek**
Clark Fork RU Priest RSU	Priest Lakes	**Upper Priest River** **Hughes Fork** **Gold Creek** **Trapper Creek** (trib. to Upper Priest Lake) **Lion Creek** (trib. to Priest Lake) **Two Mouth Creek** (trib. to Priest Lake) **Granite Creek** (trib. to Priest Lake) **North Fork Granite Creek** **South Fork Granite Creek** **Indian Creek** (trib. to Priest Lake) **Kalispell Creek** (trib. to Priest Lake) **Soldier Creek** (trib. to Priest Lake)

Recovery Goals and Objectives

The specific goal of the bull trout recovery plan is to **ensure the long-term persistence of self-sustaining, complex, interacting groups of bull trout distributed throughout the Clark Fork River basin so that the species can be delisted.** Specifically, the recovery subunit teams for the four Clark Fork River subunits (Upper Clark Fork, Lower Clark Fork, Flathead, and Priest) adopted the goal of **a sustained net increase in bull trout abundance, and increased distribution of some local populations, within existing core areas in this recovery unit (as measured by standards accepted by the recovery subunit teams, often referred to collectively as the Clark Fork Recovery Unit Teams).**

- Maintain current distribution of bull trout and restore distribution in previously occupied areas within the Clark Fork Recovery Unit.
- Maintain stable or increasing trends in abundance of bull trout in each subunit of the Clark Fork Recovery Unit.
- Restore and maintain suitable habitat conditions for all bull trout life history stages and strategies.
- Conserve genetic diversity and provide opportunity for genetic exchange.

Within that general guidance, the Clark Fork Recovery Unit Teams developed specific recovery criteria for the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. Bull trout are distributed among about 150 local populations within 38 core areas of the recovery unit (see Table 2). As more information on fish distribution and genetics is collected and analyzed, the number of local populations identified will probably increase. In this recovery unit, the historical distribution of bull trout is relatively intact, and no vacant core habitat is recommended at this time for reestablishment of extirpated local populations. Instead, emphasis is placed on securing the existing distribution within core areas and increasing the abundance and connectivity of local populations.

The Upper Clark Fork, Lower Clark Fork, Flathead, and Priest Subunit Recovery Teams adopted the following objective for the Clark Fork Recovery Unit:

> **A sustained net increase in bull trout abundance, and increased distribution of some local populations, within existing core areas in this recovery unit (as measured by standards that the Clark Fork Recovery Unit Teams develop).**

To assess progress toward this objective, each recovery subunit team adopted recovery criteria for its respective subunit. Relevant numerical standards are presented in Table 3. The standards for adult abundance, presented in Table 3, are based in part on recent historical information about the size of the adult population, as well as its potential, given the extent of the interconnected watershed.

Inherent stochastic, as well as genetic, risks are broadly acknowledged to be associated with low population levels of any species, but, to date, there has been a great deal of uncertainty about the proper application of theoretical population standards to bull trout. Rieman and Allendorf (2001) proposed that 1,000 spawning adults is a cautious management goal for long-term maintenance of genetic variation in a core area population of bull trout. The Clark Fork Recovery Unit Teams estimate that, of the 38 core areas identified in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit, only about 10 core areas have the potential to support 1,000 or more adult bull trout, even under recovered conditions.

Based in part on the analysis of Rieman and Allendorf (2001), the Clark Fork Recovery Unit Teams also assumed that a core area cannot maintain genetic viability for even the short term with spawning populations of fewer than roughly 100 adults. Rieman and Allendorf (2001) concluded that a cautious interpretation would be that approximately 100 adult bull trout, spawning each year, would be required to minimize the risk of inbreeding in a population. For some of the isolated core areas in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit, even this level of population abundance will be difficult to attain.

Table 3. Numeric standards necessary to achieve recovered abundance of bull trout in primary and secondary core areas of the Clark Fork Recovery Unit of the Columbia River drainage

CORE AREAS	Existing Number (Estimated) Local Populations	Existing Number (Estimated) Local Populations with > 100	Recovered Minimum Number Local Populations with > 100	Recovered Minimum Number Core Area Total Adult Abundance
PRIMARY **Upper Clark Fork River Complex** (Sections 1 and 2 combined)	13	0	5	1,000
Rock Creek	14	2	5	1,000
Blackfoot River	7	3	5	1,000
Bitterroot River	9	2	5	1,000
Lower Clark Fork River Complex (Clark Fork River Section 3, Lower Flathead River, Noxon Reservoir, and Cabinet Gorge Reservoir)	16	0	5	1,000
Lake Pend Oreille	14	3	6	2,500
Flathead Lake	19	9	10	2,500
Swan Lake	9	7	5	2,500
Hungry Horse Reservoir	10	5	5	1,000
Priest Lakes	12	0	5	1,000
TOTAL - PRIMARY CORES	**123**	**31**	**56**	**14,500**
SECONDARY - Clearwater River	5	0	1	Maximize with goal of > 100 in each
West Fork Bitterroot	1	1	1	
Flathead Disjuncts (22 separate adfluvial cores)	22 (1 each)	1	22 (1 each)	
TOTAL - SECONDARY CORES	**28**	**2**	**24**	**2,400**

The numerical criteria proposed by the Clark Fork Recovery Unit Teams to ensure replication of populations and to function as minimum recovery standards for adult abundance of bull trout in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit (Table 3) are based in part upon Rieman and Allendorf's (2001) estimates of the minimum population levels required for maintaining long-term genetic variability (1,000 adults) and genetic viability (100 adults). However, the Clark Fork Recovery Unit Teams also used the best professional scientific judgment of their members in setting those standards. At this time, the proposed recovery standards are based primarily on genetic concerns. Over time, protection of other ecological and biological attributes that contribute to population viability and long-term population stability will also need to be considered. Rieman and Allendorf (2001) cautioned that the guidelines they presented represent conservative minimum standards for the conservation of genetic variability and not "goals that will assure the viability of any population." They also noted that mitigation of extinction threats associated with demographic processes may require larger population sizes regardless of the genetic issues. They concluded that maintaining genetic diversity is essential, but not necessarily sufficient, for effective conservation.

It must be noted, however, that many of the small isolated populations in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit (defined below as secondary core areas) are essentially stranded local populations that have apparently persisted for a very long time, even thousands of years, at population levels very similar to current levels. Most such populations will continue to exist at a high degree of genetic risk and will be subject to high risk of extirpation from stochastic events. As more numerical data are collected and as trends are more clearly documented, the abundance standards should be further refined in their application as recovery criteria.

For purposes of recovery in this unit, the Clark Fork Recovery Unit Teams divided the entire unit into primary and secondary core areas, based mostly on the size, connectedness, and complexity of the watershed. The distinction between primary and secondary core areas indicates that a different set of standards are needed for recovery criteria, particularly for addressing abundance. The distinction does not infer a different level of importance for recovery purposes.

Primary Core Areas: Primary core areas in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit are typically located in watersheds of major river systems, often contain large lakes or reservoirs, and have migratory corridors that usually extend 50 to 100 kilometers (30 to 60 miles) or more. Each primary core area includes 7 to 19 identified local populations of bull trout. In recovered condition, a primary core area is expected to support at least 5 local populations with 100 or more adults each and to contain 1,000 or more adult bull trout in total.

The following areas have been designated as primary core areas in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit:

1. **Upper Clark Fork River** (includes two currently fragmented population segments, upstream and downstream of Milltown Dam, that are currently treated as separate core areas). Note that these core areas were historically connected and must be functionally rejoined under recovered conditions.

2. **Rock Creek**

3. **Blackfoot River**

4. **Bitterroot River**

5. **Lower Clark Fork River** (includes four currently fragmented population segments: Lower Flathead River, Thompson Falls Reservoir, Noxon Reservoir, and Cabinet Gorge Reservoir; these segments are currently treated as separate core areas). Note that these core areas were historically connected and must be functionally rejoined under recovered conditions.

6. **Lake Pend Oreille**

7. **Priest Lakes and Priest River**

8. **Flathead Lake**

9. **Swan Lake**

10. **Hungry Horse Reservoir**

Secondary Core Areas: Secondary core areas are based in smaller watersheds and typically contain adfluvial populations of bull trout that have become naturally isolated, with restricted upstream spawning and rearing habitat extending less than 50 kilometers (30 miles). Each secondary core areas includes one identified local population of bull trout (the Clearwater River is an exception, with as many as five local populations) and is not believed to contain sufficient size and complexity to accommodate 5 or more local populations with 100 or more adults to meet the abundance criteria defined above for primary core areas. Most secondary core areas have the potential to support fewer than a few hundred adult bull trout, even in a recovered condition. In extreme cases, secondary core areas may include small isolated lakes that occupy as little as 10 surface hectares (25 acres) and that are connected to 100 meters (about 100 yards) or less of accessible spawning and rearing habitat. In most cases, these conditions are natural, and, in some situations, these bull trout have probably existed for thousands of years with populations that seldom exceed 100 adults.

Collectively, the 24 secondary core areas may support a broad range of the genetic and phenotypic diversity that is representative of bull trout in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit.

The following areas have been designated as secondary core areas for the Clark Fork Recovery Unit:

1. **Clearwater River** and associated chain of lakes

2. **West Fork Bitterroot River** upstream of Painted Rocks Dam

3.–24. **22 lakes in the Flathead Recovery Subunit** (see Table 2)

It is noted that, for the portions of these watersheds in Montana, the primary core areas are functionally equivalent to the Restoration/Conservation Areas (also known as RCAs) designated by the Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team 2000. The secondary core areas generally represent the waters referred to as "disjunct" by the Montana Scientific Group.

Recovery Criteria

Listed below are the proposed recovery criteria for the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. As for the objectives identified in Chapter 1, the intent of recovery criteria within this recovery unit is to maximize the likelihood of persistence. Such persistence will be achieved, in part, by seeking to perpetuate the current distribution and by maintaining or increasing abundance of all local bull trout populations that are currently identified in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit (Table 2). Numerical summary of the recovery criteria is presented in Table 3.

Achieving the recovery criteria, including increasing monitoring and evaluation, will require the cooperative efforts of State, Federal, and Tribal resource management agencies; government and private landowners and water users; conservation organizations; and other interested parties. Criteria will only be achieved through reducing threats to bull trout, in part as a result of implementing tasks identified in the Recovery Measures Narrative section of this recovery plan, as well as by taking advantage of other new conservation and recovery opportunities as they arise.

1. **Distribution criteria will be met when the total number of identified local populations (currently numbering about 150) has been maintained or increased and when local populations remain broadly distributed in all existing core areas (Table 2).** This criteria must be applied with enough flexibility to allow for adaptive changes in the list of local populations (both additions and subtractions), based on best available science, as the body of knowledge concerning population and genetic inventory grows. It is also accepted that some secondary core areas may be at high risk of, or are currently undergoing, extirpation.

The distribution criteria cannot be met if major gaps develop in the current distribution of bull trout in the primary core areas of the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. Reconnecting fragmented habitat, as well as documenting new or previously undescribed local populations, should allow the documented distribution of bull trout to increase as recovery progresses. An exception to such an increase may occur in the Flathead Recovery Subunit where historical distribution is nearly intact.

The intention of the Clark Fork Recovery Unit Teams is also to maintain the existing bull trout distribution within all secondary core areas, but the teams recognize that stochastic events or deterministic processes already occurring are likely to cause a loss of distribution in some cases. The significance of such losses in the ultimate determination of whether or not distribution criteria have been met need to be judged on a case-by-case basis.

2. **Abundance criteria will be met when, in all 10 primary core areas, each of at least 5 local populations contain more than 100 adult bull trout. In the Lake Pend Oreille Core Area, each of at least 6 local populations must contain more than 100 adult bull trout. In the Flathead Lake Core Area, each of at least 10 local populations must contain more than 100 adult bull trout. In each of the 10 primary core areas, the total adult bull trout abundance, distributed among local populations, must exceed 1,000 fish; total abundance must exceed 2,500 adult bull trout in Lake Pend Oreille, Flathead Lake, and Swan Lake.**

Lake Pend Oreille, Flathead Lake, Swan Lake. These three core areas represent the largest natural adfluvial populations of bull trout in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit and perhaps the largest within the species' range in the United States. Each of these lakes has consistently supported spawning populations of adfluvial bull trout that produce over 500 redds annually in the currently connected portions of its watershed. Higher standards established for these three core areas reflect their higher biological potential, as well as their significance in maintaining high population levels, to conserve genetic variability within this recovery unit. These higher standards are based, in part, upon professional scientific judgment after evaluation of the existing 20 years of data for these waters.

In Lake Pend Oreille, 13 relatively complete basinwide redd counts were conducted between 1983 and 2000. These counts found an average of 657 redds in 18 streams (range 412 to 881). The 2000 redd count located 740 redds. Five drainages (Grouse, Gold, Granite, Trestle, and Lightning Creeks) consistently support over 25 redds, with the strongest (Gold and Trestle Creeks) normally exceeding 100 redds each. Johnson Creek also exceeded the 25 redd level in two of the 4 years between 1997 and 2000.

In Flathead Lake, 7 basinwide bull trout redd counts, conducted in 30 streams across 24 drainages between 1980 and 2000, found an average of 628 redds (range 236 to 1,156). The most recent basinwide count in 2000 found 555 bull trout redds, reflecting a rebounding trend from lows of the 1990's. Nine drainages (Big, Coal, Whale, Trail, and Howell [British Columbia] Creeks in the North Fork Flathead watershed and Ole, Morrison, Schafer, and Strawberry Creeks in the Middle Fork Flathead watershed) averaged 25 redds or more during the 21-year survey period, and several more drainages approached that level.

In the Swan Lake Core Area, basinwide redd counts were conducted annually between 1995 and 2000 and found an average of 752 bull trout redds in 10 streams across 8 drainages. Redd counts ranged from 703 to 861 during that period, and 717 redds were counted in 2000. Five drainages (Woodward, Goat, Lion, Jim, and Elk Creeks) consistently produced redd counts of 50 to 250 redds each, and 2 additional streams (Lost and Cold Creeks) produce about 20 to 30 redds.

Conversion of redd counts or other indices to adult numbers should be developed on a case-by-case basis, using the best available science and conversion factors that may be unique to each population. In many adfluvial populations, alternate-year spawning appears to be the norm. On the other hand, when Carnefix *et al.* (2001) used radio telemetry to track movements of 96 bull trout in the Rock Creek core area over a 3-year period, they concluded that nearly all of the fish they followed spawned annually.

Remaining Seven Primary Core Areas. In the other seven primary core areas, there are generally insufficient data over too short a period of record to provide a statistical analysis of abundance. Flathead, Pend Oreille, and Swan Lakes are thought to

represent unique situations because of the high number of extant local populations of adfluvial origin, and these lakes may not reflect the norm for the other seven primary core areas in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. The standard criteria we have adopted for the remaining core areas are 5 local populations with 100 or more adults each and 1,000 or more adults in total.

The default abundance criteria for primary core areas—five local populations with 100 or more adults and 1,000 or more adult fish in total—is designed to protect genetic integrity and to reduce chances of stochastic extirpation by replicating local populations in these core areas. As more information becomes available, the default criteria for each primary core area should be evaluated and may be adjusted to reflect that new information. The recovery unit teams emphasize that these criteria must be adaptive if we are to fully protect and restore bull trout in this recovery unit.

The abundance criteria for 24 secondary core areas will be met when each of these core areas with the habitat capacity to do so supports at least 1 local population containing more than 100 adult bull trout and when total adult abundance in the secondary core areas collectively exceeds 2,400 fish. Some of the weakest and smallest secondary core areas do not have sufficient habitat available to meet this criteria, even in a recovered condition, and these cases must be factored into the evaluation of whether or not these criteria have been attained.

Extirpation of bull trout in as many as one-fourth of the secondary core areas (6 or fewer) is expected to occur over the next 25 years, or is already in process, based upon the evaluation of existing trend and status information. This eventuality should not prevent overall abundance criteria from being attained if each of the primary core areas and the remaining secondary core areas (75 percent) meet their individual criteria. Reasonable recovery efforts must continue in all primary and secondary core areas to minimize the chance of local extirpations. Consideration must be given to using whatever means necessary to maintain or restore at-risk populations to protect the genetic and phenotypic diversity that these core areas represent in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit.

3. **Trend criteria will be met when the overall bull trout population in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit is accepted, under contemporary standards of the time, to be stable or increasing, based on at least 10 years of monitoring data.**

4. **Connectivity criteria will be met when functional fish passage is restored or determined to be unnecessary to support bull trout recovery at Milltown, Thompson Falls, Noxon Rapids, Cabinet Gorge, and Priest Lake Dams and when dam operational issues are satisfactorily addressed at Hungry Horse, Bigfork, Kerr, and Albeni Falls Dams (as identified through license conditions of the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission and the Biological Opinion of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service).** Restoring connectivity so that the abundance and distribution requirements above can be met will probably require remedying additional passage barriers identified as inhibiting bull trout migration on smaller streams within the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. Restored connectivity of the mainstem Clark Fork River will consolidate six existing core areas, a result of fragmentation caused by the dams, into two (recovered) core areas in the upper and lower Clark Fork River.

   a) In the Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit, fish passage must be provided at Milltown Dam, or the dam must be removed and the migratory corridor restored (Federal Energy Regulatory Commission relicensing process).

   b) In the Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit, fish passage needs must be fully evaluated at Thompson Falls, Noxon, and Cabinet Gorge Dams and be provided where determined biologically feasible and necessary (Federal Energy Regulatory Commission license conditions). Additional concerns relating to water level manipulation and flow regulation through the operations of Kerr Dam (Federal Energy Regulatory Commission license conditions) and Albeni Falls Dam (USFWS 2000) must also be evaluated and mitigative or restorative actions implemented.

   c) In the Flathead Recovery Subunit, no major barriers currently require passage. Concerns related to water level manipulation and flow regulation

through the operations of Kerr (Federal Energy Regulatory Commission license conditions) and Hungry Horse (USFWS Biological Opinion) Dams must be resolved, and conditions established by Federal Energy Regulatory Commission relicensing of Bigfork Dam must be met.

d) In the Priest Recovery Subunit, fish passage needs must be fully evaluated at Priest Lake Dam (Federal Energy Regulatory Commission license), and year-round fish passage must be provided if determined biologically necessary.

In all recovery subunits, substantial gains in reconnecting fragmented habitat may be achieved by restoring passage over and around many of the barriers that are typically located on smaller streams, including water diversions, road crossings, and culverts. Such barriers on small streams are not listed individually in the recovery criteria. In fact, many have not been identified. But, they are collectively important to recovery, and some are highlighted in the recovery narrative portion of this plan. A list of all such barriers should be prepared in the first five years of implementation. Substantial progress must be made in providing passage over at least half of these sites, consistent with the protection of upstream populations of westslope cutthroat trout and other native fishes, to meet the bull trout recovery criteria for connectivity.

ACTIONS NEEDED

Recovery Measures Narrative

In this chapter and all other chapters of the bull trout recovery plan, the recovery measures narrative consists of a hierarchical listing of actions that follows a standard template. The first-tier entries are identical in all chapters and represent general recovery tasks under which specific (*e.g.*, third-tier) tasks appear when appropriate. Second-tier entries also represent general recovery tasks under which specific tasks appear. Second-tier tasks that do not include specific third-tier actions are usually programmatic activities that are applicable across the species' range; they appear in *italic type*. These tasks may or may not have third-tier tasks associated with them; see Chapter 1 for more explanation. Some second-tier tasks may not be sufficiently developed to apply to the recovery unit at this time; they appear in *a shaded italic type (as seen here)*. These tasks are included to preserve consistency in numbering tasks among recovery unit chapters and intended to assist in generating information during the comment period for the draft recovery plan, a period when additional tasks may be developed. Third-tier entries are tasks specific to the Clark Fork Recovery Unit. They appear in the Implementation Schedule that follows this section and are identified by three numerals separated by periods.

The Clark Fork Recovery Unit chapter should be updated as recovery tasks are accomplished or revised as environmental conditions change and as monitoring results or additional information become available. The Clark Fork Recovery Unit Teams should meet annually to review annual monitoring reports and summaries and to make recommendations to the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

UPPER CLARK FORK RECOVERY SUBUNIT

1 Protect, restore, and maintain suitable habitat conditions for bull trout.

1.1 Maintain or improve water quality in bull trout core areas or potential core habitat.

1.1.1 Reduce general sediment sources. Stabilize roads, crossings, and other sources of sediment delivery. Implement Watershed Improvement Needs activities throughout the Bitterroot River watershed and sediment source reduction activities identified by comprehensive U.S. Forest Service survey(s) elsewhere. Priority watersheds include **Bitterroot River:** Cameron, Camper, Fred Burr, Lolo (Highway 12), Martin, Meadow, Moose, Overwhich, Piquett, and Warm Springs Creeks and the Nez Perce Fork, East Fork, and mainstem Bitterroot Rivers; **Blackfoot River:** Arrastra, Belmont, Dick, Elk, Hogum, McElwain. Moose, Murray, Nevada, Poorman, Rock, Sauerkraut, Seven Up Pete, Warm Springs, and Wilson Creeks; **Clark Fork River:** Boulder, Cedar, Dry, Fish, Flint, Racetrack, Rattlesnake, Tamarack, and Warm Springs Creeks and the St. Regis and mainstem Clark Fork Rivers; **Little Blackfoot River:** Dog, Ontario, and Telegraph Creeks and numerous sites identified in survey; **Rock Creek:** Stony and Upper Willow Creeks and Middle Fork, Ross Fork, West Fork, and mainstem Rock Creek.

1.1.2 Upgrade problem roads. Increase maintenance of extensive secondary road systems of the U.S. Forest Service, Plum Creek Timber Company, and State lands by increasing application of best management practices, with emphasis on remediation of sediment-producing hotspots and maintenance of bridges, culverts, and crossings in drainages supporting bull trout spawning and rearing. Decommission surplus forest roads, especially those that are chronic sources of sediment and/or those located in areas of highly erodible geological formations. Remove culverts and/or bridges on closed roads that are no longer maintained. Paving or graveling portions of major roads that encroach on riparian zones to reduce sediment delivery may be appropriate, but such resurfacing must be considered on a case-by-case basis along with other factors, such as the impacts of easier accessibility for anglers. Priority watersheds include

Bitterroot River: Nez Perce Fork Road (improve), Meadow and Moose Creek roads in the East Fork, roads along the mainstem and Slate Creek in the West Fork Bitterroot River, and Skalkaho Highway; **Blackfoot River:** Poorman Creek (pave portions of Stemple Pass Road to reduce sediment delivery to the creek) and South Fork Poorman Creek (reroute a portion of the county road up the creek to the hillside to eliminate one culvert and three fords within a 0.4-kilometer [0.25-mile] stream reach); **Clark Fork River:** Fish Creek Road, State Highway 1 along Flint Creek, I-90 corridor, Upper Warm Springs Creek Road, Foster Creek, Storm Lake Road, and South Boulder Creek Road; **Rock Creek:** Skalkaho Highway (State Highway 38) along the West Fork, mainstem Rock Creek Road (needs management plan), Copper Creek, and Upper Willow Creek.

1.1.3 Clean up mine waste. Control mining runoff by removing or stabilizing mine tailings and waste rock deposited in the stream channel and floodplains and by restoring stream channel function. Priority watersheds include **Bitterroot River:** Hughes Creek in the West Fork Bitterroot, Stansbury Vermiculite Mine; **Blackfoot River:** Beartrap, Day Gulch, Douglas, Elk, Jefferson, Poorman, Sandbar (tributary to Willow), Sauerkraut, Seven Up Pete, Washington, Washoe, West Fork Ashby, and Willow Creeks and the mainstem Blackfoot River (downstream of the Mike Horse Dam that partially washed out in 1975); **Clark Fork River:** Dunkleberg (Forest Rose), Douglas (Wasa), Boulder (Nonpariel site), Cedar, Ninemile, Quartz, and Trout Creeks and the St. Regis River; **Little Blackfoot River:** Charter Oak, Golden Anchor, Ontario, and numerous other mine sites; **Rock Creek:** Frog Pond basin and sites in Middle Fork Rock Creek and Stony Creek drainages.

1.1.4 Implement Atlantic Richfield Corporation mitigation. Implement mitigation activities resulting from the Atlantic Richfield

Corporation settlement for heavy metals contamination of at least 562 kilometers (349 miles) of streams and 5,000 hectares (13,000 acres) of the Clark Fork River floodplain between Warm Springs Creek and Milltown Reservoir from past mining and ore-processing activities in the Butte and Anaconda areas. Impacts to surface water, streambed sediments, benthic macroinvertebrates, trout populations, riparian wildlife, and vegetation have been documented in the Clark Fork and Blackfoot River watersheds, and a mitigation plan is being developed through an advisory board process.

1.1.5 Monitor McDonald Gold Mine. Monitor the application status of the former McDonald Gold Mine near Lincoln and, if mine operations move forward, implement mitigation actions to reduce the potential negative effects on water quality and quantity.

1.1.6 Restore fish passage at Milltown Dam. Monitor and participate (representing bull trout concerns) in Superfund processes designed to decide the fate of Milltown Dam and the heavy metal deposits stored behind it. Fully restoring fish passage and eliminating the threat of toxic sediment discharge during runoff events are important elements for reducing fragmentation and supporting bull trout recovery.

1.1.7 Assess and mitigate nonpoint thermal pollution. Assess and attempt to mitigate effects on bull trout from thermal increases (nonpoint sources) that negatively impact receiving waters and migratory corridors downstream. Priority watersheds include **Bitterroot River:** Blodgett, Fred Burr, Kootenai, Roaring Lion, Lolo, Sawtooth, Skalkaho, Sleeping Child, and Tin Cup Creeks and the mainstem and East Forks of the Bitterroot River; **Blackfoot River:** Cottonwood (near Helmville), Douglas, Elk, Nevada, Nevada Spring, Union, and Willow (near Sauerkraut) Creeks and the Clearwater River; **Clark Fork River:** Fish, Flint,

Ninemile, Petty Creeks and the entire mainstem of the Clark Fork River; **Little Blackfoot River:** throughout the drainage; **Rock Creek:** Upper Willow Creek.

1.1.8 Reduce nutrient input. Reduce nutrient delivery throughout the Bitterroot and Clark Fork River watersheds by improving sewage disposal, agricultural practices, and silvicultural practices.

1.1.9 Implement water quality regulations. Enforce water quality standards and implement a total maximum daily load program.

1.1.10 Minimize recreational development in bull trout spawning and rearing habitat. Minimize impacts from expansion or development of new golf courses, ski areas, campgrounds, fishing access sites, and second home or other recreational developments in the corridors of bull trout spawning and rearing streams.

1.2 Identify barriers or sites of entrainment for bull trout and implement tasks to provide passage and eliminate entrainment.

1.2.1 Eliminate entrainment in diversions. Screen both water diversions and irrigation ditches to reduce entrainment losses or eliminate unneeded diversions. Priority watersheds include **Bitterroot River:** Bass, Blodgett, Burnt Fork, Chaffin, Fred Burr, Hughes, Kootenai, Lolo, Mill, Roaring Lion, Sawtooth, Skalkaho, Sleeping Child, Sweathouse, Tin Cup, and Tolan Creeks and the East Fork, Nez Perce Fork, and West Fork Bitterroot Rivers; **Blackfoot River:** Poorman Creek and mainstem Blackfoot River between Landers Fork and Poorman Creeks and between Lincoln and Nevada Creeks; **Clark Fork River:** Twin Lakes Creek in the Warm Springs Creek drainage, Flint Creek watershed, the mainstem Clark Fork River (five Missoula Valley diversions); **Little Blackfoot River:** Dog Creek and other creeks not yet evaluated; **Rock Creek:** East Fork Rock

Creek (Flint Creek Diversion), Ross Fork Rock Creek (diversions), and Upper Willow Creek (diverions).

1.2.2 Provide fish passage around diversions. Install appropriate fish passage structures around diversions and/or remove related migration barriers to facilitate bull trout movement. Priority watersheds include **Bitterroot River:** Burnt Fork, Fred Burr, Lolo, Skalkaho (Republican Ditch and others), Sleeping Child, and Warm Springs (Highway 93 crossing) Creeks; **Clark Fork River:** Dry and Lower Willow Creeks in Flint Creek drainage and Rattlesnake, Storm Lake, and Twin Lakes Creeks in Warm Springs Creek drainage; **Little Blackfoot River:** throughout drainage (survey is needed).

1.2.3 Eliminate culvert barriers. Monitor road crossings for blockages to upstream passage and, where beneficial to native fish, replace or improve existing culverts that impede passage. Priority watersheds include **Bitterroot River:** Bugle, Hughes, Lolo, Moose, Upper Mine, and Warm Springs Creeks and the upper West Fork and Nez Perce Fork of the Bitterroot River; **Blackfoot River:** Arrastra (Section 24), Cotter (tributary to Copper Creek), Cottonwood, Hogum, Moose, Poorman, Sauerkraut, and Spring Creeks; **Clark Fork River:** Fish Creek, Tamarack Creek, and St. Regis River; **Little Blackfoot River:** Hat Creek; **Rock Creek:** Skalkaho Highway crossings on West Fork Rock Creek (Duncie Creek, Fuse Creek, and others).

1.2.4 Restore connectivity over other manmade barriers. Investigate manmade barriers that were installed to eliminate upstream fish movement through Rainy, Alva, and Inez Lakes in the Clearwater River drainage, in Harvey Creek (Upper Clark Fork River), and in any other streams. Assess advisability and feasibility of restoring passage.

1.2.5 Improve instream flows. Restore connectivity and opportunities for migration by securing or improving instream flows and/or acquiring water rights. Priority streams identified to date (see also Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks dewatered streams list) include **Bitterroot River:** Bass, Big, Blodgett, Chaffin, Fred Burr, Kootenai, Lolo, Lost Horse, Mill, North Bear, O'Brien, Roaring Lion, Rock, Sawtooth, Skalkaho, Sleeping Child, South Bear, South Fork Lolo, Sweathouse, Sweeney, Tin Cup, Tolan, and Warm Springs Creeks and the East Fork, Burnt Fork, and mainstem of the Bitterroot River from Corvallis to Stevensville; **Blackfoot River:** Cottonwood (stream miles 9 to 11) and Poorman Creeks and the mainstem Blackfoot River between Landers Fork and Poorman Creek; **Clark Fork River:** Cedar, Dry, Grant, Petty, and Twin Lakes Creeks and the Flint Creek drainage (including Douglas and Lower Willow Creeks); **Rock Creek:** Beaver Creek (tributary to Upper Willow).

1.2.6 Consider fish salvage, as needed. Consider implementing fish salvage programs, as needed, as an interim measure to address stranding while long-term solutions are developed (*e.g.,* Blackfoot River between Landers Fork and Poorman Creeks, East Fork Rock Creek at Flint Creek diversion).

1.2.7 Consider passage around natural barriers. Evaluate and make recommendations concerning potential benefits of fish passage around, or establishment of resident bull trout populations upstream of, natural barriers as a way to conserve genetic diversity in existing bull trout populations in the following areas: **Bitterroot River:** Bass, Daly, North Lost Horse, Overwhich, and Sweathouse Creeks upstream of falls; **Blackfoot River:** Arrastra Creek (section 24), Landers Fork (Silver King Falls), and North Fork Blackfoot River above North Fork Falls.

1.3 Identify impaired stream channel and riparian areas and implement tasks to restore their appropriate functions.

1.3.1 Conduct watershed problem assessments. Identify site-specific threats (problem assessment) that may be limiting bull trout in watersheds that have not already been evaluated, including the Bitterroot River, Little Blackfoot River, middle portions of the Clark Fork River, and Rock Creek drainages.

1.3.2 Prioritize actions on waters with restoration potential. As recovery progresses, identify highest-priority actions—ones that will contribute most to recovery—on streams in the Bitterroot River drainage where bull trout occurrence is incidental (or on contributing waters with no bull trout). Areas include Bass, Bear, Big, Cameron, Camp, Chaffin, Gird, Hayes, Lost Horse, Miller, One Horse, Patte, Rye, St. Clair, Sweeney, and Willow Creeks and the West Fork Bitterroot River downstream of Painted Rocks.

1.3.3 Revegetate denuded riparian areas. Revegetate to restore shade and canopy, riparian cover, and native vegetation. Priority watersheds include **Bitterroot River:** Blodgett, Fred Burr, Hughes, Meadow, Mill, Skalkaho, Sleeping Child, and Sweathouse Creeks and the East Fork, West Fork, Burnt Fork, and mainstem of the Bitterroot River; **Blackfoot River:** the mainstem Blackfoot River between the North Fork Blackfoot River and Arrastra Creek, Dunham Creek, Landers Fork, Nevada Creek, and other sites throughout the drainage; **Clark Fork:** Cedar, Dry, Fish, Ninemile, South Fork Lower Willow, **and** Petty Creeks and the St. Regis and mainstem Clark Fork Rivers; **Little Blackfoot River:** throughout the drainage; **Rock Creek:** the East Fork, Middle Fork, and Ross Fork of Rock Creek.

1.3.4 Improve grazing practices. Reduce negative effects of grazing by improving management practices and/or fencing riparian areas.

Priority watersheds include **Bitterroot River:** Bugle, Camp (west fork), Fred Burr, Gird, Lolo, Meadow, Mill, Skalkaho, Sleeping Child, and Tolan Creeks and the Burnt Fork, East Fork, and mainstem Bitterroot River; **Blackfoot River:** the mainstem Blackfoot River (from Lincoln to mouth) and Beaver, Blanchard, Belmont, Cottonwood, Dick, Douglas, Elk, Frazier, Hogum, Humbug, Keep Cool, Kleinschmidt, McElwain, Monture, Murray, Nevada, Nevada Spring, Poorman, Rock, Sauerkraut, Shanley, Warren, Wasson, Willow, and Yourname Creeks; **Clark Fork River:** Cedar, Petty, Racetrack, Tamarack, and Twin (St. Regis River drainage) Creeks and other sites (largely private lands) throughout the upper Clark Fork River drainage; **Little Blackfoot River:** Dog, Elliston, and Hat Creeks and the mainstem Little Blackfoot River; **Rock Creek:** the entire upper drainage, especially the upper mainstem Rock Creek, Middle Fork Rock Creek, Meadow Creek, Beaver Creek, Ross Fork, Sand Basin, Stoney Creek, and U.S. Forest Service allotments on Upper Willow Creek.

1.3.5 Restore stream channels. Conduct stream channel restoration activities where such activities are likely to benefit native fish and only where similar results cannot be achieved by other, less costly and less intrusive means. Priority watersheds include **Bitterroot River:** Blodgett, Burnt Fork, Fred Burr, Hughes, Lolo, Mill, O'Brien, Overwhich, Skalkaho, Sleeping Child, and Sweathouse Creeks and the East Fork (Highway 93 reconstruction) and Nez Perce Fork Bitterroot Rivers; **Blackfoot River:** Cottonwood, Dunham, Kleinschmidt, Landers Fork, Moose, Rock, Sauerkraut, and Warren Creeks; **Clark Fork River:** South Fork Lower Willow Creek in the Flint Creek drainage; **Rock Creek:** Stony Creek (Moose Gulch, Shively Gulch), Upper Willow Creek (Shylo Gulch, Miners Gulch), and the East Fork and West Fork of Rock Creek (Coal Gulch).

1.3.6 Improve instream habitat. Increase or improve instream habitat by restoring recruitment of large woody debris, restoring pool development, or by initiating other appropriate activities, wherever the need is identified. Priority watersheds include **Blackfoot River:** Chamberlain and Gold Creeks, the mainstem Blackfoot River upstream of Lincoln, and the Landers Fork; **Bitterroot River:** Burnt Fork, Lolo, and Moose Creeks and the East Fork Bitterroot River downstream of Camp Creek; **Clark Fork River:** Ninemile Creek; **Little Blackfoot River:** portions of the Little Blackfoot River that have been channelized by railroad and highway development.

1.3.7 Minimize potential stream channel degradation. Ensure that negative effects on bull trout of ongoing flood control activities are minimized (*e.g.*, dredging, channel clearing, and bank stabilization on the Clark Fork, Blackfoot, and Bitterroot Rivers).

1.3.8 Manage beaver to function naturally in maintaining wetlands. Manage beaver populations to maintain wetland complexes that provide important biological filters (*e.g.*, Mike Renig Gulch in the Little Blackfoot River drainage).

1.3.9 Reduce riparian firewood harvest. Implement campaigns, such as with signs, to improve public awareness or implement regulatory actions to eliminate firewood cutting in riparian areas, especially in the Rock Creek and Skalkaho Creek drainages.

1.3.10 Reduce impacts from campsite use. Identify and mitigate impacts from concentrated use of campsites on the Burnt Fork and Skalkaho Creeks in the Bitterroot River drainage; on the North Fork and mainstem Blackfoot Rivers and Monture, Copper, and Gold Creeks; on Middle Fork and mainstem Rock Creeks; and on Racetrack Creek in the upper Clark Fork River drainage.

1.3.11 Mitigate for transportation corridor encroachment on streams. Mitigate for impacts from the legacy effects of highway and railroad encroachment, channel straightening, channel relocation, and undersized bridges on the Bitterroot River (U.S. 93), Blackfoot River (Montana 200), Clark Fork River (I-90), Lolo Creek (U.S. 12), and St. Regis River (I-90).

1.3.12 Reduce impacts to Foster Creek. Identify and mitigate potential impacts (from sediment, water use, use of riparian areas) of the Anaconda Job Corps Center development on Foster Creek in the Warm Springs Creek drainage of the upper Clark Fork River drainage.

1.4 Operate dams to minimize negative effects on bull trout.

1.4.1 Reduce reservoir operational impacts. Review reservoir operational concerns (*e.g.*, water level manipulation, minimum pool elevation) and provide operating recommendations for East Fork Reservoir (East Fork Rock Creek), Georgetown Lake (Flint Creek), Nevada Reservoir (Nevada Creek in Blackfoot River drainage), and Painted Rocks Reservoir (West Fork Bitterroot River).

1.4.2 Provide instream flow downstream of dams. Maintain or exceed established instream flows downstream of Painted Rocks Reservoir (West Fork Bitterroot River), East Fork Reservoir (East Fork Rock Creek), and Georgetown Lake (Flint Creek). Establish instream flows from high-elevation reservoirs in the Bitterroot National Forest on Bass, Big, Blodgett, Burnt Fork, Fred Burr, and Tin Cup Creeks.

1.4.3 Operate Milltown Dam to minimize impact on native fish. If the dam is not removed, operate to minimize potential for downstream discharge of heavy metal deposits in Milltown

Reservoir. Operate the dam to minimize northern pike reproduction and maximize survival and downstream passage of bull trout juveniles and adults. Restore upstream fish passage.

1.4.4 Evaluate fish passage at Painted Rocks Dam. Evaluate advisability and need for upstream fish passage at Painted Rocks Dam (West Fork Bitterroot River).

1.5 Identify upland conditions that negatively affect bull trout habitats and implement tasks to restore appropriate functions.

1.5.1 Mitigate for legacy effects of mining-related timber management practices. Continue to mitigate for legacy effects of mining-related timber harvest and for other impairment from poor silvicultural practices in the last century in the following areas: **Blackfoot River:** Bear, Belmont, Chamberlain, Deer, Keno, Marcum, McElwain, and Richmond Creeks and the North Fork Blackfoot and West Fork Clearwater Rivers; **Clark Fork River:** Fish, Rattlesnake, and Trout Creeks and the St. Regis River.

1.5.2 Monitor fire effects and mitigate effects where necessary. Monitor effects from wild fires and pursue habitat restoration actions where warranted, especially in the upper portions of the Bitterroot River drainage (where there were fires in 2000).

2 Prevent and reduce negative effects of nonnative fishes and other nonnative taxa on bull trout.

2.1 Develop, implement, and evaluate enforcement of public and private fish stocking policies to reduce stocking of nonnative fishes that affect bull trout.

2.1.1 Review fish stocking programs. Review annual fish stocking programs to minimize potential conflict with this bull trout recovery plan.

2.1.2 Regulate private fish ponds. Reduce the risk of inadvertent introduction of nonnative fish from private fish ponds by closely regulating existing permits to ensure that only permitted species are stocked and that fish barriers are maintained and by attaching conditions to future permits.

2.1.3 Encourage development of commercial sources of westslope cutthroat trout. Develop and maintain an approved and available source of genetically diverse native westslope cutthroat trout for private pond stocking. Follow stocking guidelines developed by the Montana Westslope Cutthroat Trout Technical Committee.

2.2 Evaluate policies for preventing illegal transport and introduction of nonnative fishes.

2.3 Inform the public about ecosystem concerns of illegal introductions of nonnative fishes.

2.3.1 Discourage unauthorized fish introductions. Implement educational efforts about the problems and consequences of unauthorized fish introductions.

2.3.2 Develop bull trout education program. Develop a public information program with a broad emphasis on bull trout ecology and life history requirements and with a more specific focus on regionally or locally important recovery issues.

2.4 Evaluate biological, economic, and social effects of control of nonnative fishes.

2.5 Implement control of nonnative fishes where found to be feasible and appropriate.

2.5.1 Experimentally remove established brook trout populations. Evaluate opportunities for experimentally removing brook trout from selected streams and lakes. Priority watersheds include **Bitterroot River:** Blodgett, Boulder, Fred Burr, Hughes, Kootenai, Lolo, Martin, Meadow, Mill, O'Brien, Overwhich, Piquett, Roaring Lion, Sawtooth, Skalkaho, Slate, Sleeping Child, Springer, Tin Cup, Trapper, and Warm Springs Creeks and the East Fork, Burnt Fork, and Nez Perce Fork Bitterroot Rivers; **Blackfoot River:** Cottonwood, Hogum, Nevada (upstream of Shingle Mill), Poorman, Sauerkraut, and South Fork Poorman Creeks and the North Fork Blackfoot River upstream of the falls; **Clark Fork River:** Lower Twin Lake and Storm Lake Creek in the Warm Springs Creek drainage; **Little Blackfoot River:** Bison, Hat, Elliston, and Ontario Creeks; **Rock Creek:** East Fork Reservoir and upstream waters.

2.5.2 Suppress northern pike in Clearwater Lakes chain. Continue assessment of predator–prey interactions in Clearwater Chain of Lakes, with emphasis on the northern pike threat and suppression of those populations.

2.5.3 Reduce brown trout numbers in portions of mainstem rivers. Continue to encourage harvest of brown trout in the mainstem Blackfoot, Clark Fork, and Bitterroot Rivers and in Rock Creek by maintaining liberal angling regulations.

2.6 Develop tasks to reduce negative effects of nonnative taxa on bull trout.

2.6.1 Evaluate bull trout–brown trout interaction. Evaluate the interaction between bull trout and brown trout populations in the

Blackfoot River drainage, including the potential threat of brown trout redds superimposed on bull trout redds.

3 Establish fisheries management goals and objectives compatible with bull trout recovery and implement practices to achieve goals.

3.1 Develop and implement State and Tribal native fish management plans integrating adaptive research.

3.1.1 Implement adaptive management of native fish management plans. Develop and implement native fish management plans that emphasize integration of research results into management programs.

3.1.2 Aggressively protect remaining native species complexes. Protect integrity of all intact native species assemblages, such as in Harvey Creek (upper Clark Fork River), Belmont and Copper Creeks, and the Landers Fork of the Blackfoot River, by aggressively removing any nonnative invaders.

3.2 Evaluate and prevent overharvest and incidental angling mortality of bull trout.

3.2.1 Minimize unintentional mortality of bull trout. Continue to develop and implement sport angling regulations and fisheries management plans, guidelines, and policies that minimize incidental mortality of bull trout in all waters, especially the most heavily fished reaches of Rock Creek and the Bitterroot, Blackfoot, upper Clark Fork, and Clearwater Rivers.

3.2.2 Evaluate enforcement of angling regulations and oversee scientific research. Ensure compliance with angling regulations and scientific collection policies and target bull trout spawning and staging areas for enforcement.

3.2.3 Implement angler education efforts. Inform anglers about special regulations and about how to identify bull trout and reduce hooking mortality of bull trout caught incidentally, especially in the most heavily fished migratory habitat of mainstem rivers.

3.2.4 Solicit information from commercial guides. Develop a reporting system to collect information on bull trout caught and released by commercial fishing guides on the Bitterroot River, Blackfoot River, and Rock Creek.

3.3 Evaluate potential effects of introduced fishes and associated sport fisheries on bull trout recovery and implement tasks to minimize negative effects on bull trout.

3.3.1 Evaluate site-specific conflicts with introduced sport fish. Determine site-specific level of predation, competition, and hybridization of bull trout with introduced sport fish and assess effects of those interactions, especially with brook trout, brown trout, and northern pike in the Blackfoot, Bitterroot, and Clark Fork Rivers.

3.4 Evaluate effects of existing and proposed sport fishing regulations on bull trout.

3.4.1 Evaluate effects of existing and proposed angling regulations on bull trout in heavily fished waters. Rapidly increasing angler pressure has led to increasing concerns about angling regulations, species complexes, unintentional mortality, and other angler-related issues affecting bull trout on the most heavily fished waters of Rock Creek and the Blackfoot, Bitterroot, and Clark Fork Rivers. An investigation of these issues should be made, and recommendations on how to reduce impacts to bull trout recovery should be developed and adaptively implemented.

4 Characterize, conserve, and monitor genetic diversity and gene flow among local populations of bull trout.

4.1 Incorporate conservation of genetic and phenotypic attributes of bull trout into recovery and management plans.

4.1.1 Conduct genetic inventory. Continue coordinated genetic inventory throughout recovery subunit, with emphasis on upper Clark Fork and Clearwater River drainages, to contribute to establishing a program to understand the genetic baseline and to monitor genetic changes throughout the range of bull trout (see Chapter 1 narrative).

4.2 Maintain existing opportunities for gene flow among bull trout populations.

4. 3 Develop genetic management plans and guidelines for appropriate use of transplantation and artificial propagation.

5 Conduct research and monitoring to implement and evaluate bull trout recovery activities, consistent with an adaptive management approach using feedback from implemented, site-specific recovery tasks.

5.1 Design and implement a standardized monitoring program to assess the effectiveness of recovery efforts affecting bull trout and their habitats.

5.2 Conduct research evaluating relationships among bull trout distribution and abundance, bull trout habitat, and recovery tasks.

5.2.1 Identify suitable unoccupied habitat. Identify suitable bull trout habitat that is unoccupied, if any. Within five years, complete a comprehensive list of all known passage barriers that prevent upstream-migrating bull trout from accessing suitable habitat.

5.2.2 Investigate bull trout movement and distribution. Investigate movement, distribution, and status of bull trout in the Bitterroot, middle Clark Fork, Clearwater, Little Blackfoot, and St. Regis River drainages and make recovery recommendations.

5.2.3 Evaluate importance of contributing waters. Evaluate the importance and contribution to bull trout recovery of streams with only incidental bull trout presence.

5.2.4 Map spawning habitat. Develop a comprehensive map of primary bull trout spawning reaches in tributaries for the purpose of focusing protection and recovery efforts.

5.2.5 Coordinate monitoring of fish movement. Develop a coordinated fish marking and tracking strategy (*e.g.*, standardized PIT tags and radio implant frequencies) throughout the Clark Fork River basin so that marked fish are recognized and reported when captured in other States or different project jurisdictions (*e.g.*, Lake Pend Oreille, Avista, Milltown).

5.2.6 Evaluate water temperature as a limiting factor. Evaluate water temperature as a limiting factor and/or migration barrier in the mainstem of the Bitterroot, Blackfoot, Clearwater, and Clark Fork Rivers.

5.3 Evaluate the adequacy and effectiveness of current and past best management practices in maintaining or achieving habitat conditions conducive to bull trout recovery.

5.3.1 Develop and implement best management practices for managing water diversions. Establish best management practices for constructing, maintaining, and operating water diversion structures.

5.3.2 Implement best management practices for grazing in riparian zones. Establish best management practices for grazing management and establish a monitoring program in riparian zones.

5.3.3 Expand monitoring of forestry best management practices. Continue and expand monitoring of compliance and effectiveness of Montana Forestry best management practices and recommend adjustments to best management practices to correct any documented deficiencies.

5.3.4 Protect groundwater inflow sources. Inventory and protect important stream reaches with groundwater inflow.

5.4 Evaluate effects of diseases and parasites on bull trout and develop and implement strategies to minimize negative effects.

5.4.1 Monitor fish health in private hatcheries. Closely regulate fish health in private hatcheries that supply fish for private ponds (State and Federal hatcheries are already closely monitored).

5.4.2 Prevent spread of fish pathogens. Survey and evaluate fish health before implementing major fish passage projects.

5.4.3 Evaluate effects of whirling disease on bull trout. Continue experimental evaluation (and limited field survey) of the potential effects of whirling disease on bull trout.

5.5 Develop and conduct research and monitoring studies to improve information concerning the distribution and status of bull trout.

5.6 Identify evaluations needed to improve understanding of relationships among genetic characteristics, phenotypic traits, and local populations of bull trout.

5.6.1 Investigate status of migratory and resident life history forms. Investigate the genetic and/or behavioral basis of resident and migratory bull trout in the Bitterroot River basin.

5.6.2 Research origin of migratory bull trout at Milltown Dam. Continue to investigate life history and spawning habitat of bull trout congregating below Milltown Dam.

6 Use all available conservation programs and regulations to protect and conserve bull trout and bull trout habitats.

6.1 Use partnerships and collaborative processes to protect, maintain, and restore functioning core areas for bull trout.

6.1.1 Support watershed group restoration efforts. Support collaborative efforts by local watershed groups already established in Montana, such as the Bitterroot Water Forum, Blackfoot Challenge, Trout Unlimited Chapters, and Clark Fork Coalition, to accomplish site-specific protection and restoration activities consistent with this recovery plan.

6.1.2 Protect habitat. Provide long-term habitat protection through purchase, conservation easements, watershed restoration, management plans, land exchanges, and other methods. Opportunities have been identified on the Blackfoot River and the Little Blackfoot River upstream of Hwy. 12 crossing; Hughes Creek in the West Fork Bitterroot River drainage; and Fish Creek, the mainstem Clark Fork River, and Rock Creek.

6.1.3 Integrate watershed restoration efforts on public and private lands. Integrate watershed analyses and restoration activities on public lands in the headwaters and on private lands lower in the watersheds to ensure activities are complementary for bull trout

restoration (*e.g.*, Bitterroot River, Dunham Creek, Fish Creek, Landers Fork of the Blackfoot River, Rattlesnake Creek, Rock Creek, and Warm Springs Creek).

6.1.4 Develop strategy for implementation participation. Develop participation plans to support implementation or recovery actions in the Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit.

6.2 Use existing Federal authorities to conserve and restore bull trout.

6.2.3 Complete Federal Energy Regulatory Commission licensing of Milltown Dam. Complete Federal Energy Regulatory Commission licensing or decommissioning of Milltown Dam (beyond current license expiration date of December 31, 2006) and implement mitigation plan and/or dam removal.

6.2.4 Implement Plum Creek Habitat Conservation Plan. Carry out compliance monitoring and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service commitment to adaptive management planning under the Plum Creek Native Fish Habitat Conservation Plan, primarily applicable to waters of the Blackfoot River and upper Clark Fork River watersheds.

6.3 Evaluate enforcement of existing Federal and State habitat protection standards and regulations and evaluate their effectiveness for bull trout conservation.

6.3.1 Fully implement State habitat protection laws. Fully implement the Montana Streamside Management Zone Law (1993), Montana Stream Protection Act (1965), and Montana Natural Streambed and Land Preservation Act (1975) to maximize legal protection of bull trout habitat under State law and evaluate the effectiveness of these laws in conserving bull trout habitat.

6.3.2 Encourage floodplain protection. Encourage local governments to develop, implement, and promote restrictive regulations for floodplains to mitigate extensive habitat loss and stream encroachment from rural residential development throughout the Bitterroot, Blackfoot, and upper Clark Fork River drainages because these and other effects of development exacerbate temperature problems, increase nutrient loads, decrease bank stability, alter instream and riparian habitat, and change hydrologic response of affected watersheds.

7 Assess the implementation of bull trout recovery by recovery units and revise recovery unit plans based on evaluations.

LOWER CLARK FORK RECOVERY SUBUNIT

1 Protect, restore, and maintain suitable habitat conditions for bull trout.

1.1 Maintain or improve water quality in bull trout core areas or potential core habitat.

1.1.1 Reduce general sediment sources. Stabilize roads, crossings, and other sources of sediment delivery. Priority watersheds include **Idaho:** Gold, Granite, Grouse, Lightning, North Gold, and Trestle Creeks and the Middle Fork East River and Pack River; **Montana:** Elk, Fish Trap (Thompson River tributary), Marten, Pilgrim, Prospect, Rock, Snake Swamp, West Fork Elk (Bull River tributary) Creeks and the Bull, South Fork Bull, South Fork Jocko, Thompson, Vermilion, and West Fork Thompson Rivers.

1.1.2 Upgrade problem roads. Increase maintenance of extensive secondary road systems—U.S. Forest Service, Plum Creek Timber Company, and State lands—by increased application of best management practices, with emphasis on remediating sediment-producing hotspots and on maintaining bridges,

culverts, and crossings in drainages that support bull trout spawning and rearing. Decommission surplus forest roads, especially those that are chronic sources of sediment and those that are located in areas of highly erodible geological formations. Remove culverts and bridges on closed roads that are no longer maintained. Eliminate one of two main roads paralleling either side of Thompson River to reduce impacts of sediment and floodplain encroachment.

1.1.3 Clean up mine waste. Control mining runoff by removing or stabilizing mine tailings and waste rock formerly deposited in the stream channel and floodplain of upper South Gold Creek and Chloride Gulch.

1.1.4 Evaluate and, if necessary, mitigate impacts from Rock Creek Mine. Develop and implement an aggressive mitigation program to protect bull trout in the Rock Creek watershed if the Rock Creek Mine (Sterling Mining Company) is developed.

1.1.5 Implement Atlantic Richfield Corporation mitigation on Flathead Indian Reservation. Implement Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes/Atlantic Richfield Corporation settlement to improve water quality in Flathead Reservation streams.

1.1.6 Assess and mitigate nonpoint thermal pollution. Continue to evaluate adequacy of existing thermal regime in the lower Flathead River, Thompson River, and mainstem Clark Fork River reservoirs in meeting needs of migratory bull trout and explore options to correct conditions.

1.1.7 Reduce nutrient input. Assess and, if needed, address effects of nutrient enrichment from Missoula Municipal Sewage Plant, Stone Container Mill, and shoreline development at Lake Pend Oreille .

1.1.8 Implement water quality regulations. Evaluate enforcement of water quality standards and implement total maximum daily load program.

1.1.9 Minimize recreational development in bull trout spawning and rearing habitat. Minimize impacts from expansion or development of new golf courses, ski areas, campgrounds, fishing access sites, and second home or other recreational developments in the corridors of bull trout spawning and rearing streams.

1.2 Identify barriers or sites of entrainment for bull trout and implement tasks to provide passage and eliminate entrainment.

1.2.1 Eliminate entrainment in diversions. Screen both water diversions and irrigation ditches or eliminate unneeded diversions (evaluate Grouse Creek, Swamp Creek, and others, as identified by watershed groups).

1.2.2 Provide fish passage around diversions. Install appropriate fish passage structures around diversions and/or remove related migration barriers in **Idaho:** Granite Creek, Strong Creek; **Montana:** Crow Creek, Dry Creek, Jocko River, Mission Creek, Post Creek, Swamp Creek, and others, as identified.

1.2.3 Eliminate culvert barriers. Monitor road crossings for blockages to upstream passage, and, where beneficial to native fish, replace or improve existing culverts that impede passage (*e.g.,* Blue Creek, Middle Fork East River, and North Fork East River).

1.2.4 Mitigate Trestle Creek flume impacts. Investigate effects of the Trestle Creek flume and develop a plan to minimize and mitigate negative effects of the flume and unused water rights.

1.2.5 Improve instream flows. Restore connectivity and opportunities for migration by securing or improving instream flows. This task can be accomplished in part by acquiring water rights from willing sellers in Montana (priority streams identified to date are Rock and Swamp Creeks) or by designating minimum flows through the statutory process in Idaho (*e.g.*, Trestle Creek).

1.2.6 Consider fish salvage, as needed. Consider implementing fish salvage programs, as needed, as an interim measure to address stranding while long-term solutions are developed (*e.g.*, Rock Creek).

1.3 Identify impaired stream channel and riparian areas and implement tasks to restore their appropriate functions.

1.3.1 Conduct watershed problem assessments. Identify site-specific threats (problem assessment) that may be limiting bull trout in watersheds that have not already been evaluated (*e.g.*, East River)

1.3.2 Revegetate denuded riparian areas. Revegetate to restore shade and canopy, riparian cover, and native vegetation. Priority watersheds include **Idaho:** Pack River and Twin Creek; **Montana:** meadow portion of mainstem Bull River, Jocko River, Prospect Creek, Rock Creek, and Vermilion River.

1.3.3 Improve grazing practices. Reduce negative effects of grazing with improved grazing management or riparian fencing. Priority watersheds include **Idaho:** Grouse Creek, Lightning Creek, Twin Creek; **Montana:** Jocko River, Pilgrim Creek, Post Creek, Swamp Creek, and Thompson River (upper mainstem and tributaries), Little Thompson River, and Fish Trap Creek.

1.3.4 Restore stream channels. Conduct stream channel restoration activities where they are likely to benefit native fish and only

where similar results cannot be achieved by other, less costly and less intrusive means. Priority watersheds include **Idaho:** Grouse, Lightning, and lower Twin Creeks and the Pack River; **Montana:** Barrey and Copper (both Bull River tributaries), Fish Trap (Thompson River tributary), Graves, Marten, Prospect, and Rock Creeks and the Jocko, Vermilion, and West Fork Thompson Rivers.

1.3.5 Improve instream habitat. Increase or improve instream habitat by restoring recruitment of large woody debris, restoring pool development, or by initiating other appropriate activities (*e.g.*, deforested power line crossing on South Gold Creek, East River).

1.3.6 Minimize potential stream channel degradation. Ensure that negative effects to bull trout of ongoing flood control activities (*e.g.*, dredging, channel clearing on Lightning Creek) are minimized.

1.3.7 Manage beaver to function naturally in maintaining wetlands. Manage beaver populations to maintain wetland complexes that provide important biological filters, while also closely examining beaver dams on a case-by-case basis to take action to minimize disruption of bull trout migration through migratory corridors because of beaver dams.

1.4 Operate dams to minimize negative effects on bull trout.

1.4.1 Evaluate and restore upstream fish passage at mainstem Clark Fork and Pend Oreille River dams. Investigate and implement upstream fish passage at Albeni Falls (USFWS Biological Opinion), Cabinet Gorge and Noxon Rapids (Avista fish passage protection, mitigation, and enhancement measures), and Thompson Falls Dams, as needed, to reconnect fragmented core habitat of bull trout with Lake Pend Oreille.

1.4.2 Provide safe passage downstream through dams and reservoirs. Provide safe downstream fish passage from Montana tributaries through Thompson Falls, Noxon Rapids, and Cabinet Gorge Dams and Reservoirs for juvenile and adult bull trout migrating to Lake Pend Oreille.

1.4.3 Reduce reservoir operational impacts. Review reservoir operational concerns (*e.g.*, water level manipulation) and provide operating recommendations through the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission license and/or Federal consultation for Lake Pend Oreille (USFWS Biological Opinion), Cabinet Gorge, Noxon Rapids, and Thompson Falls Reservoirs.

1.4.4 Research and recommend instream flows and minimum pools on the Flathead Agency Irrigation District. Conduct research on operations of Flathead Agency Irrigation District reservoirs and recommend simulated natural flow regimes and implement minimum pool levels in St. Marys, Mission, and McDonald Reservoirs.

1.4.5 Provide instream flow downstream of dams. Maintain or exceed established minimum flow releases of 1,500 cubic meters per second (5,000 cubic feet per second) downstream of Cabinet Gorge Dam and 975 cubic meters per second (3,200 cubic feet per second) downstream of Kerr Dam, as provided for in the respective Federal Energy Regulatory Commission licenses. Evaluate instream flow for adequacy and recommend revision, as needed.

1.4.6 Research and recommend instream flow in lower Flathead River. Complete instream flow research on lower Flathead River (Kerr Dam Mitigation) and implement ramping rate and minimum flow recommendations.

1.4.7 Maintain passage through alluvial fans in Lake Pend Oreille. Maintain physical passage through alluvial fans (resulting from reservoir fluctuation from operations of Albeni Falls Dam) on streams that enter Lake Pend Oreille (*e.g.*, North Gold and South Gold Creeks).

1.4.8 Assess impact of Lake Pend Oreille water levels on kokanee salmon. Continue research on the response of the kokanee salmon population in Lake Pend Oreille to modified winter lake levels per the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Opinion (USFWS 2000) as kokanee salmon are an important food source for bull trout and may help to reduce competition between bull trout and other top predators.

1.4.9 Avoid gas supersaturation. Reduce gas entrainment, which causes supersaturation conditions believed to be detrimental to bull trout, at Noxon Rapids and Cabinet Gorge Dams and evaluate potential problems of gas supersaturation at Kerr and Thompson Falls Dams.

1.5 Identify upland conditions that negatively affect bull trout habitats and implement tasks to restore appropriate functions.

1.5.1 Monitor fire effects and mitigate effects where necessary. Monitor effects from wild fires and pursue habitat restoration actions where warranted.

2 Prevent and reduce negative effects of nonnative fishes and other nonnative taxa on bull trout.

2.1 Develop, implement, and evaluate enforcement of policies on public and private fish stocking to reduce stocking of nonnative fishes that affect bull trout.

2.1.1 Review fish stocking programs. Review annual fish stocking programs to minimize potential conflict with this bull trout recovery plan.

2.1.2 Regulate private fish ponds. Reduce the risks of inadvertent introduction of nonnative fish from private fish ponds by closely regulating existing permits to ensure that only permitted species are stocked and that fish barriers are maintained and by attaching conditions to future permits.

2.1.3 Encourage development of commercial sources of westslope cutthroat trout. Develop and maintain an approved and available source of genetically diverse native westslope cutthroat trout for private pond stocking. Follow stocking guidelines developed by the Montana Westslope Cutthroat Trout Technical Committee.

2.2 Evaluate policies for preventing illegal transport and introduction of nonnative fishes.

2.2.1 Optimize enforcement of laws and policies that prohibit unauthorized fish transplant and stocking. Strengthen enforcement of existing laws and continue to work to improve the legal and policy framework for preventing unauthorized fish transplant and stocking.

2.3 Inform the public about ecosystem concerns of illegal introductions of nonnative fishes.

2.3.1 Discourage unauthorized fish introductions. Implement educational efforts about the problems and consequences of unauthorized fish introductions.

2.3.2 Develop bull trout education program. Develop a public information program with a broad emphasis on bull trout ecology

and life history requirements and a more specific focus on regionally or locally important recovery issues.

2.4 Evaluate biological, economic, and social effects of control of nonnative fishes.

2.4.1 Assess superimposition of brown trout and kokanee salmon redds on bull trout redds. Assess the threat of kokanee salmon redds superimposed on bull trout redds in Granite Creek (including Sullivan Springs) and of brown trout redds superimposed on bull trout redds in the Bull River, Twin Creek, and other sites, as identified.

2.4.2 Evaluate northern pike and smallmouth bass in the lower Flathead River. Evaluate, and if necessary control expansion of northern pike and recent accidental introduction of smallmouth bass in the lower Flathead River and waters downstream.

2.5 Implement control of nonnative fishes where found to be feasible and appropriate.

2.5.1 Experimentally remove established brook trout populations. Evaluate opportunities to experimentally remove brook trout from selected streams and lakes. Priority watersheds include **Idaho:** East Fork Lightning Creek, North Fork Grouse Creek, Porcupine Creek, Porcupine Lake, and Twin Creek; **Montana:** Clear Creek (Prospect Creek tributary); Copper, Elk, and Graves Creeks (upstream of falls); Marten, Mosquito, and Pilgrim Creeks; and the South Fork Bull River.

2.5.2 Suppress lake trout in Lake Pend Oreille. Continue assessment of predator–prey interactions in mainstem reservoirs and Lake Pend Oreille. In Lake Pend Oreille, evaluate the threat of lake trout and

analyze options for using commercial-type fishing gear to reduce lake trout numbers.

2.5.3 Suppress brown trout in Bull River. Evaluate and experimentally remove brown trout from Bull River and other drainages, as necessary. Block access for spawning brown trout to the East Fork Bull River. Conduct evaluation of potential response of native species.

2.6 Develop tasks to reduce negative effects of nonnative taxa on bull trout.

3 Establish fisheries management goals and objectives compatible with bull trout recovery and implement practices to achieve goals.

3.1 Develop and implement State and Tribal native fish management plans integrating adaptive research.

3.1.1 Implement adaptive management of native fish management plans. Adaptively integrate research results into management programs and native fish management plans.

3.1.2 Implement Avista Native Salmonid Restoration Plan. Develop and implement an aggressive management strategy for bull trout for the Bull River and other watersheds in the regulated portion of the mainstem Clark Fork River drainage consistent with the Avista Native Salmonid Restoration Plan and Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks policies. According to the Avista Native Salmon Restoration Plan, and consistent with genetic guidelines, management strategy may include stock transfer, controlled propagation, and/or rearing of bull trout for the purposes of genetic attribute maintenance, refugia, reintroduction, or otherwise supporting recovery.

3.2 Evaluate and prevent overharvest and incidental angling mortality of bull trout.

3.2.1 Minimize unintentional mortality of bull trout. Continue to develop and implement sport angling regulations and fisheries management plans, guidelines, and policies that minimize unintentional mortality of bull trout in Lake Pend Oreille, the Clark Fork River, and the mainstem reservoirs.

3.2.2 Evaluate enforcement of angling regulations and oversee scientific research. Ensure compliance with angling regulations and scientific collection policies and target bull trout spawning and staging areas for enforcement.

3.2.3 Implement angler education efforts. Inform anglers about special regulations and about how to identify bull trout and reduce hooking mortality of bull trout caught incidentally in Lake Pend Oreille, the Clark Fork River, and the mainstem reservoirs.

3.2.4 Solicit information from commercial guides. Develop a reporting system to collect information on bull trout that are caught and released from charter boats and by commercial fishing guides on Lake Pend Oreille and the Clark Fork River.

3.3 Evaluate potential effects of introduced fishes and associated sport fisheries on bull trout recovery and implement tasks to minimize negative effects on bull trout.

3.3.1 Evaluate site-specific conflicts with introduced sport fish. Determine site-specific level of predation, competition, and hybridization of bull trout with introduced sport fish and assess the effects of those interactions, especially for lake trout, Kamloops rainbow trout, and brook trout in Lake Pend Oreille and tributaries and for brown trout, rainbow trout, brook trout,

northern pike, largemouth and smallmouth bass, and possibly walleye in the watershed upstream of Cabinet Gorge Dam.

3.3.2 Regulate mainstem reservoirs to inhibit reproduction of nonnative fish. Evaluate options to regulate water levels on Thompson Falls, Noxon Rapids, and Cabinet Gorge Reservoirs and Lake Pend Oreille in a pattern to reduce survival of nonnative species that are detrimental to bull trout recovery.

3.4 Evaluate effects of existing and proposed sport fishing regulations on bull trout.

3.4.1 Evaluate opportunities for regulated bull trout fisheries. Evaluate management proposals to allow carefully regulated fisheries for, and potential harvest of, bull trout (in Lake Pend Oreille or other waters) where monitoring of the population status provides a clear record that a harvestable surplus can be maintained and that such harvest will benefit, or at least not be detrimental to, recovery goals.

4 Characterize, conserve, and monitor genetic diversity and gene flow among local populations of bull trout.

4.1 Incorporate conservation of genetic and phenotypic attributes of bull trout into recovery and management plans.

4.1.1 Conduct genetic inventory. Continue coordinated genetic inventory throughout recovery subunit and analysis of origin of bull trout captured downstream of Cabinet Gorge Dam.

4.2 Maintain existing opportunities for gene flow among bull trout populations.

4.3 Develop genetic management plans and guidelines for appropriate use of transplantation and artificial propagation.

5 Conduct research and monitoring to implement and evaluate bull trout recovery activities, consistent with an adaptive management approach using feedback from implemented, site-specific recovery tasks.

5.1 Design and implement a standardized monitoring program to assess the effectiveness of recovery efforts affecting bull trout and their habitats.

5.2 Conduct research to evaluate relationships among bull trout distribution and abundance, bull trout habitat, and recovery tasks.

5.2.1 Identify suitable unoccupied habitat. Identify suitable unoccupied habitat, if any. Within five years, complete a comprehensive list of all known passage barriers that prevent upstream-migrating bull trout from accessing suitable habitat.

5.2.2 Evaluate habitat suitability (*i.e.*, thermal conditions) in reservoirs. Continue to evaluate suitability of mainstem reservoir habitat for bull trout and investigate potential methods for temperature manipulation.

5.2.3 Investigate bull trout movement and distribution. Determine movement and seasonal use of different habitat types by adult and subadult migratory bull trout with emphasis on Lake Pend Oreille and the mainstem Clark Fork River and reservoirs.

5.2.4 Coordinate monitoring of fish movement. Develop a coordinated fish marking and tracking strategy *(e.g.*, standardized PIT tags and radio implant frequencies) throughout the Clark Fork River basin so that marked fish are recognized and reported when

captured in other States or different project jurisdictions (*e.g.*, Lake Pend Oreille, Avista, Milltown).

5.2.5 Research origin of bull trout that migrate to Cabinet Gorge Dam. Investigate life history of bull trout spawning in the mainstem Clark Fork River below Cabinet Gorge Dam.

5.2.6 Evaluate feasibility of maintaining fluvial/resident populations. If restoration of adfluvial bull trout runs from Lake Pend Oreille upstream of Cabinet Gorge Dam does not succeed, refocus strategy toward establishing multiple fluvial and resident populations, consistent with the Native Salmonid Restoration Plan.

5.2.7 Map spawning habitat. Develop a comprehensive map of primary tributary reaches of bull trout spawning for focusing protection and recovery efforts.

5.3 Conduct evaluations of the adequacy and effectiveness of current and past best management practices in maintaining or achieving habitat conditions conducive to bull trout recovery.

5.3.1 Evaluate efficacy of trap/transport project. Conduct an assessment to determine whether transported juvenile fish survive better than those migrating volitionally through the lower Clark Fork River dams.

5.4 Evaluate effects of diseases and parasites on bull trout and develop and implement strategies to minimize negative effects.

5.4.1 Monitor fish health in private hatcheries. Closely regulate fish health in private hatcheries that supply fish for private ponds (State and Federal hatcheries are already closely monitored).

5.4.2 Prevent spread of fish pathogens. Survey and evaluate fish health before implementing major fish passage projects.

5.5 Develop and conduct research and monitoring studies to improve information concerning the distribution and status of bull trout.

5.5.1 Evaluate Middle Fork East River. Assess bull trout population status in the Middle Fork East River and determine whether this local population has a migratory component. If that component is present, assess the extent of the foraging, migrating, and overwintering habitat and whether the population's origin is derived from Priest Lake or Lake Pend Oreille.

5.6 Identify evaluations needed to improve understanding of relationships among genetic characteristics, phenotypic traits, and local populations of bull trout.

6 Use all available conservation programs and regulations to protect and conserve bull trout and bull trout habitats.

6.1 Use partnerships and collaborative processes to protect, maintain, and restore functioning core areas for bull trout.

6.1.1 Support watershed group restoration efforts. Support collaborative efforts by local watershed groups that are already established in Montana and Idaho to accomplish site-specific protection/restoration activities consistent with this Recovery Plan.

6.1.2 Protect habitat. Provide long-term habitat protection through purchase, conservation easements, watershed restoration, management plans, and other methods**.** Emphasize in **Idaho:** Gold, Granite, Grouse, Johnson, Lightning, North Gold, Trestle,

and Twin Creeks and the Pack River watershed; in **Montana:** Bull River, Prospect Creek, and Jocko River watersheds.

6.2 Use existing Federal authorities to conserve and restore bull trout.

6.2.1 Monitor compliance with Avista Federal Energy Regulatory Commission Settlement Agreement. Monitor compliance with Avista Settlement Agreement (Federal Energy Regulatory Commission license) for operations of Cabinet Gorge and Noxon Rapids Dams.

6.2.2 Evaluate existing Federal Energy Regulatory Commission license conditions at Thompson Falls Dam. Evaluate compliance with Federal Energy Regulatory Commission Order and the potential need to reopen license for purposes of fish passage at Thompson Falls Dam.

6.2.3 Implement Federal Energy Regulatory Commission license conditions for Kerr Dam. Monitor compliance with Kerr Dam Federal Energy Regulatory Commission license conditions and operations in the Flathead River downstream of Kerr Dam.

6.2.4 Federal Columbia River Power System Biological Opinion. Monitor compliance with U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Opinion (USFWS 2000) (Federal Columbia River Power System) related to operation of Albeni Falls Dam on the outlet of Lake Pend Oreille.

6.2.5 Expedite Flathead Agency Irrigation District Biological Opinion. Expedite a Biological Assessment and Biological Opinion for the Flathead Agency Irrigation Project to eliminate the existing take.

6.2.6 Implement Plum Creek Habitat Conservation Plan. Carry out compliance monitoring and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service

commitment to adaptive management planning under the Plum Creek Native Fish Habitat Conservation Plan.

6.3 Evaluate enforcement of existing Federal and State habitat protection standards and regulations and evaluate their effectiveness for bull trout conservation.

6.3.1 Fully implement State and Tribal habitat protection laws. Fully implement the Montana Streamside Management Zone Law (1993), Montana Stream Protection Act (1965), Montana Natural Streambed and Land Preservation Act (1975), Idaho Forest Practices Act (1974), Idaho Lake Protection Act (1973), Idaho Stream Channel Protection Act (1967), and Idaho Code 36-906 addressing fish passage (pre-1900) to maximize legal protection of bull trout habitat under State law and evaluate the effectiveness of these laws in conserving bull trout habitat.

6.3.2 Encourage floodplain protection. Encourage local governments to develop, implement, and promote restrictive regulations for floodplains to mitigate extensive habitat loss and stream encroachment from rural residential development throughout the lower Clark Fork River drainage because these and other effects of development exacerbate temperature problems, increase nutrient loads, decrease bank stability, alter instream and riparian habitat, and change hydrologic response of affected watersheds.

7 Assess the implementation of bull trout recovery by recovery units and revise recovery unit plans based on evaluations.

FLATHEAD RECOVERY SUBUNIT

1 Protect, restore, and maintain suitable habitat conditions for bull trout.

1.1 Maintain or improve water quality in bull trout core areas or potential core habitat.

1.1.1 Reduce general sediment sources. Stabilize roads, stream crossings, trails, natural landslides, and other sources of sediment delivery. Priority watersheds include Big, Coal, Trail, Red Meadow, and Whale Creeks and the North Fork Flathead River; Cauldrey, Howell, and Kishinehn Creeks and the British Columbia portion of the (North Fork) Flathead River; Cold, Elk, Goat, Jim, Kraft, Lion, Lost, Piper, Squeezer, and Woodward Creeks and the Swan River; Granite Creek and the Middle Fork Flathead River; Quintonkon, Sullivan, Wheeler, and Wounded Buck Creeks and the South Fork Flathead River; tributaries to Cyclone, Frozen, Holland, Lindbergh, McDonald, and Tally Lakes; Swift Creek and the Whitefish River; the Stillwater River drainage; and the mainstem Flathead River.

1.1.2 Address forest road maintenance and hotspots. Increase maintenance of extensive secondary road systems on U.S. Forest Service, Plum Creek Timber Company, and State lands by increased application of best management practices, with emphasis on remediating sediment-producing hotspots and maintaining bridges, culverts, and crossings in drainages that support bull trout spawning and rearing. Decommission surplus forest roads, especially those that are chronic sources of sediment and those that are located in areas of highly erodible geological formations. Remove culverts and bridges on closed roads that are no longer maintained.

1.1.3 Improve maintenance along transportation corridors. Improve maintenance of all major roads and railroads along riparian corridors to reduce impacts of sediment and floodplain encroachment. When reconstruction occurs, advocate moving major problem reaches out of riparian corridors. Improve

capability for quick response for dealing with potential hazardous material spills (especially on Highway 93, Highway 2 east of Kalispell, the North Fork Flathead River, Swan Highway, and major east–west rail lines).

1.1.4 Modify problem reaches of trail system. Improve or relocate portions of the U.S. Forest Service and Glacier National Park trail system to eliminate stream crossings in known bull trout spawning reaches (*e.g.*, Granite Creek on the Middle Fork Flathead River) and minimize human activity at these locations.

1.1.5 Monitor existing and future coal mine development in British Columbia. Monitor sediment and potential acid mining runoff related to existing and proposed coal mining activities in the British Columbia portion of the North Fork Flathead River.

1.1.6 Minimize recreational development in bull trout spawning and rearing habitat. Minimize impacts from expansion or development of new golf courses, ski areas, campgrounds, fishing access sites, and second home or other recreational developments in the corridors of bull trout spawning and rearing streams.

1.1.7 Assess nutrient input and increase water quality monitoring and remediation. Assess and continue to address effects of nutrient enrichment from municipal sewage plants, agriculture, forestry, and development of lakeshores. Increase water quality monitoring in major lake basins (*e.g.*, Flathead, Swan, Whitefish, McDonald). Focus water quality remediation efforts on rapidly developing and implementing total maximum daily load programs for impaired water bodies (section 303[d] list) that contain bull trout.

1.1.8 Implement water quality regulations. Evaluate enforcement of water quality standards and implement total maximum daily load program.

1.2 Identify barriers or sites of entrainment for bull trout and implement tasks to provide passage and eliminate entrainment.

1.2.1 Eliminate entrainment in diversions. Screen both water diversions and irrigation ditches or remove those that are no longer needed.

1.2.2 Provide fish passage around diversions. Install appropriate fish passage structures around diversions and/or remove related migration barriers. Consider native fish genetic concerns and the potential for invasion by nonnatives (*e.g.*, Bigfork Dam) when making evaluations.

1.2.3 Eliminate culvert barriers. Monitor road crossings for blockages to upstream passage and, where beneficial to native fish, replace or remove existing culverts or bridges that impede passage. Consider native fish genetic concerns and the potential for invasion by nonnatives when making evaluations. The following drainages are of highest priority for this task: Big, Coal, Trail, Red Meadow, and Whale Creeks in the North Fork Flathead River drainage; Cauldrey, Howell, and Kishinehn Creeks and the British Columbia portion of the mainstem (North Fork) Flathead River; Cold, Elk, Fatty, Goat, Jim, Kraft, Lion, Lost, Piper, Soup, Squeezer, and Woodward Creeks in the Swan River drainage; Clark, Paola, and Tunnel Creeks in the Middle Fork Flathead River drainage; Quintonkon, Sullivan, Wheeler, and Wounded Buck Creeks in the South Fork Flathead River drainage; tributaries to Cyclone, Frozen, Holland, Lindbergh, McDonald, and Tally Lakes; Swift Creek and the Whitefish River; and the Stillwater River drainage.

1.2.4 Improve instream flows. Restore connectivity and opportunities for migration by securing or improving instream flows and acquiring or leasing water rights from willing sellers. The highest-priority streams are those with bull trout spawning and rearing.

1.3 Identify impaired stream channel and riparian areas and implement tasks to restore their appropriate functions.

1.3.1 Conduct watershed problem assessments. Identify site-specific threats (problem assessment) that may be limiting bull trout in watersheds that have not already been evaluated. Evaluate adfluvial populations in Akokala, Arrow, Big Salmon, Bowman, Cerulean, Cyclone, Doctor, Frozen, Harrison, Holland, Isabel, Kintla (2), Lindbergh, Logging, McDonald, Quartz (3), Stillwater (2), Tally, Trout, Upper Whitefish, and Whitefish Lakes and quantify population numbers, trends, and extent of habitat used.

1.3.2 Revegetate denuded riparian areas. Revegetate past riparian harvest zones to restore shade and canopy, riparian cover, and native vegetation.

1.3.3 Improve grazing practices. Reduce negative effects of grazing by fencing riparian areas or improving management practices. Priority watersheds include Hay Creek in the North Fork Flathead River drainage and Logan Creek (Tally Lake).

1.3.4 Restore stream channels. Conduct stream channel restoration activities where evaluation indicates that such activities are necessary to restore proper stream function and only where similar results cannot be achieved by other, less costly and less intrusive means. Priority watersheds include Bear Creek in the Middle Fork Flathead drainage.

1.3.5 Improve instream habitat. Increase or improve instream habitat by restoring recruitment of large woody debris or by initiating other appropriate methods. Streams include Big, Coal, Red Meadow, and Whale Creeks in the North Fork Flathead River drainage and Bear Creek in the Middle Fork Flathead River drainage.

1.3.6 Minimize potential stream channel degradation. Ensure that negative effects to bull trout of ongoing flood control and streambank stabilization activities (*e.g.*, riprap, dredging, channel clearing) are minimized.

1.4 Operate dams to minimize negative effects on bull trout.

1.4.1 Reduce reservoir operational impacts. Review Flathead Lake and Hungry Horse Reservoir operational concerns (*e.g.*, water level manipulation) and support operating recommendations that provide enforceable drawdown limits and refill guidelines through Federal Energy Regulatory Commission license (Kerr) and/or Federal consultation (Hungry Horse Reservoir; USFWS Biological Opinion). The Variable Flow Flood Control model should be implemented by water managers to provide comprehensive, long-term, balanced, and predictable allocation of water resources from Hungry Horse Reservoir that will limit the duration and frequency of deep reservoir drawdowns, improve reservoir refill probability, and produce a more naturally shaped dam discharge pattern downstream (USFWS 2000). Once implemented, these strategies must be evaluated to determine the effects on bull trout recovery.

1.4.2 Provide instream flow downstream of dams. Maintain or exceed recommended instream flow levels in the lower South Fork Flathead River (USFWS 2000), using results of current research, and minimize peaking flows in the mainstem Flathead River

downstream of Hungry Horse Dam. Consider bull trout concerns when developing flood control release patterns.

1.4.3 Evaluate selective withdrawal at Hungry Horse Dam. Evaluate the adequacy of the selective withdrawal system in partially restoring the normal summer thermal regime in the Flathead River downstream of Hungry Horse Dam and assess whether it meets the needs of migratory bull trout. Refine operations if necessary.

1.4.4 Avoid gas supersaturation from Hungry Horse Dam. Avoid conditions for potential gas entrainment to cause nitrogen supersaturation below Hungry Horse Dam that is detrimental to bull trout.

1.4.5 Evaluate impact of dam operations on bull trout predators. Continue research on response of introduced predators (*i.e.*, lake trout and northern pike) to Flathead Lake and Flathead River water level and temperature manipulations and provide recommendations for operation of Hungry Horse and Kerr Dams to favor native species.

1.5 Identify upland conditions that negatively affect bull trout habitats and implement tasks to restore appropriate functions.

1.5.1 Monitor fire effects and mitigate effects where necessary. Monitor effects from wild fires and pursue habitat restoration actions where warranted.

2 Prevent and reduce negative effects of nonnative fishes and other nonnative taxa on bull trout.

2.1 Develop, implement, and evaluate enforcement of policies for public and private fish stocking to reduce stocking of nonnative fishes that affect bull trout.

2.1.1 Upgrade fish hatchery practices. Evaluate all fish-stocking programs and private and public hatchery practices to minimize the risk of further inadvertent introduction of nonnative species, strains, or pathogens to the Flathead River drainage.

2.1.2 Regulate private fish ponds. Reduce the risks of inadvertent introduction of nonnative species from private fish ponds by closely regulating existing permits to ensure that only permitted species are stocked and that fish barriers are maintained and by attaching conditions to future permits.

2.1.3 Encourage development of commercial sources of westslope cutthroat trout. Develop and maintain an approved and available source of genetically diverse native westslope cutthroat trout for private pond stocking. Follow stocking guidelines developed by the Montana Westslope Cutthroat Trout Technical Committee.

2.2 Evaluate policies for preventing illegal transport and introduction of nonnative fishes.

2.2.1 Optimize enforcement of laws and policies that prohibit unauthorized fish transplant and stocking. Strengthen enforcement of existing laws and continue to work to improve the legal and policy framework for preventing unauthorized fish transplant and stocking.

2.3 Inform the public about ecosystem concerns of illegal introductions of nonnative fishes.

2.3.1 Discourage unauthorized fish introductions. Focus an intensive public education campaign in the Flathead River basin to reduce the rampant spread of nonnative fish species; to date at least 220 unauthorized introductions have occurred into 121 waters in

northwest Montana. Strong enforcement of existing laws prohibiting illegal introduction is needed.

2.3.2 Develop bull trout education program. Develop public information program with a broad emphasis on bull trout ecology and life history requirements and a more specific focus on regionally or locally important recovery issues.

2.4 Evaluate biological, economic, and social effects of control of nonnative fishes.

2.4.1 Develop protocols for suppressing nonnative fish. Conduct research and develop protocols to describe the most effective methods for suppressing or eradicating nonnative fish populations from waters where they negatively impact bull trout recovery, with emphasis on lake trout, brook trout, and northern pike.

2.4.2 Discourage illegally introduced sport fish populations. Adopt an aggressive approach to angling regulations and fisheries management that avoids legitimizing fisheries for illegally established populations of nonnative fish and that supports minimizing the presence of and/or removing illegally introduced fish.

2.5 Implement control of nonnative fishes where found to be feasible and appropriate.

2.5.1 Experimentally remove established brook trout populations. Evaluate opportunities for, and conduct experimental removal of, brook trout from selected streams and lakes. Priority watersheds include Bear Creek (Middle Fork Flathead River) and selected sites within the Swan River and upper Stillwater River drainages.

2.5.2 Suppress brown trout in Mill Creek. Remove newly established reproducing brown trout population from Mill Creek in the Flathead River drainage.

2.6 Develop tasks to reduce negative effects of nonnative taxa on bull trout.

2.6.1 Reduce/minimize impacts of northern pike. Evaluate and, if warranted, control expansion of northern pike in the Flathead River and associated sloughs or other waters to minimize predation on bull trout.

2.6.2 Consider installing barriers to hinder spread of nonnative fish. In portions of the Flathead Recovery Subunit, threats of invasion in isolated lakes by nonnative fish, especially lake trout from downstream, may exceed concerns over fragmentation due to barriers. In some such situations, consider barrier installation downstream of vulnerable adfluvial bull trout populations: for example, Frozen, Cyclone, Holland, Lindbergh, and Quartz Lakes.

3 Establish fisheries management goals and objectives compatible with bull trout recovery and implement practices to achieve goals.

3.1 Develop and implement State and Tribal native fish management plans integrating adaptive research.

3.1.1 Implement adaptive management of native fishes in Flathead Lake and Flathead River. Implement the Flathead Lake and River Co-Management Plan so that it accommodates bull trout recovery goals and minimizes the emigration of lake trout upstream and downstream through the Flathead River system. Monitor and evaluate the effectiveness of the management plan in meeting bull trout recovery goals and make adaptive changes, if necessary.

Continue assessment of predator–prey interactions in Flathead Lake, with emphasis on lake trout.

3.1.2 Develop and implement a Swan Lake management strategy. Develop and implement a management strategy for Swan Lake that seeks to eliminate recently discovered individual lake trout by whatever means possible. Intensify management activities to protect bull trout if lake trout are found to establish or reproduce. Maintain Bigfork Dam as an upstream fish barrier.

3.1.3 Aggressively protect remaining native species complexes. Manage the lakes thought to contain uncompromised adfluvial bull trout populations (*i.e.*, currently not known to contain extensive populations of competing nonnative species) to minimize the risk of nonnative fish introductions; use aggressive protective regulations and information and education campaigns. Lakes include Akokala, Arrow, Big Salmon, Cerulean, Cyclone, Doctor, Frozen, Isabel, Lower Quartz, Middle Quartz, Trout, Upper Kintla, Upper Quartz, and Upper Whitefish Lakes.

3.2 Evaluate and prevent overharvest and incidental angling mortality of bull trout.

3.2.1 Minimize unintentional bull trout mortality. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks; Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes; and Glacier National Park should continue to develop and implement sport angling regulations and fisheries management plans, guidelines, and policies that minimize incidental mortality of bull trout.

3.2.2 Evaluate enforcement of angling regulations and oversee scientific research. Ensure compliance with angling regulations and Federal, State, and Tribal policies for scientific collection and target bull trout spawning and staging areas for enforcement.

Poaching is a particularly sensitive problem in the recovery subunit due to the vulnerability of large migratory spawners from Flathead, Holland, Swan, Lindbergh, and other lakes.

3.2.3 Implement angler education efforts. Inform anglers about special regulations and how to identify bull trout and reduce hooking mortality of bull trout that are caught incidentally in Flathead Lake, the Flathead River and tributaries, and other fisheries.

3.2.4 Solicit information from commercial guides. Develop a reporting system to collect information on bull trout that are caught and released from charter boats and by commercial fishing guides on Flathead Lake and the Flathead and Swan Rivers.

3.2.5 Coordinate with British Columbia fisheries monitoring and management authorities. Continue close communication with the British Columbia Ministry of Environment to carefully monitor the potential effects of the bull trout fishery and management program in the Flathead River in British Columbia.

3.3 Evaluate potential effects of introduced fishes and associated sport fisheries on bull trout recovery and implement tasks to minimize negative effects on bull trout.

3.3.1 Evaluate site-specific conflicts with introduced sport fish. Determine the site-specific level of predation, competition, and hybridization of bull trout with introduced sport fish (especially lake trout, brook trout, and northern pike) and take management actions to minimize the effects of those interactions while maintaining or restoring a viable bull trout population in lakes that are currently at risk, including Bowman, Harrison, Holland, Kintla, Lindbergh, Logging, Lake McDonald, Upper and Lower Stillwater, Tally, and Whitefish Lakes. Evaluate and implement

site-specific opportunities to eliminate nonnatives and restore native fish communities in Glacier National Park lakes.

3.4 Evaluate effects of existing and proposed sport fishing regulations on bull trout.

3.4.1 Evaluate opportunities for regulated bull trout fisheries. Evaluate management proposals to allow carefully regulated fisheries for, and potential harvest of, bull trout (in Hungry Horse Reservoir, in accordance with the existing Conservation Agreement, or in other waters) where monitoring of the population status provides a clear record that a harvestable surplus can be maintained and that such harvest will benefit, or at least not be detrimental to, recovery goals. Such fisheries may provide a unique opportunity to fish for native species that anglers will value and, consequently, may help protect these waters from unauthorized introductions.

4 Characterize, conserve, and monitor genetic diversity and gene flow among local populations of bull trout.

4.1 Incorporate conservation of genetic and phenotypic attributes of bull trout into recovery and management plans.

4.1.1 Conduct genetic inventory. Continue coordinated genetic inventory and protect genetic diversity throughout recovery subunit, with emphasis on analyzing bull trout from adfluvial core areas and assessing the hybridization threat with brook trout. Core areas include Akokala, Arrow, Big Salmon, Bowman, Cerulean, Cyclone, Doctor, Frozen, Harrison, Holland, Isabel, Kintla (2), Lindbergh, Logging, Lake McDonald, Quartz (3), Stillwater (2), Tally, Trout, Upper Whitefish, and Whitefish Lakes.

4.2 Maintain existing opportunities for gene flow among bull trout populations.

4.3 Develop genetic management plans and guidelines for appropriate use of transplantation and artificial propagation.

5 Conduct research and monitoring to implement and evaluate bull trout recovery activities, consistent with an adaptive management approach using feedback from implemented, site-specific recovery tasks.

5.1 Design and implement a standardized monitoring program to assess the effectiveness of recovery efforts affecting bull trout and their habitats.

5.1.1 Develop standardized monitoring procedures. Conduct in-depth statistical analysis of existing bull trout databases for the Flathead River and Swan River populations (including redd counts and juvenile abundance estimates over the past 20 years) to validate and interpret trends, assess potential information gaps, and identify future monitoring needs. Continue to conduct annual index monitoring to support and expand long-term database. Develop standardized bull trout monitoring procedures to apply throughout the Clark Fork Recovery Unit.

5.2 Conduct research evaluating relationships among bull trout distribution and abundance, bull trout habitat, and recovery tasks.

5.2.1 Identify suitable unoccupied habitat. Identify suitable unoccupied habitat, if any. Within five years, complete a comprehensive list of all known passage barriers that prevent upstream-migrating bull trout from accessing suitable habitat.

5.2.2 Map spawning habitat. Develop a comprehensive map of primary tributary reaches of bull trout spawning for focusing habitat protection and recovery efforts.

5.3 Conduct evaluations of the adequacy and effectiveness of current and past best management practices in maintaining or achieving habitat conditions conducive to bull trout recovery.

5.4 Evaluate effects of diseases and parasites on bull trout and develop and implement strategies to minimize negative effects.

5.4.1 Monitor fish health in private hatcheries. Closely regulate fish health in private hatcheries that supply fish for private ponds (State and Federal hatcheries are already closely monitored).

5.4.2 Prevent spread of fish pathogens. Survey and evaluate fish health before implementing new fish passage projects.

5.5 Develop and conduct research and monitoring studies to improve information concerning the distribution and status of bull trout.

5.5.1 Increase monitoring of adfluvial bull trout populations in smaller lakes. Increase monitoring of adfluvial populations to determine population status, distribution, movement, and seasonality of use of different habitat types by adult and subadult bull trout in the following lakes and their watersheds: Akokala, Arrow, Bowman, Cerulean, Cyclone, Doctor, Frozen, Harrison, Holland, Isabel, Kintla (2), Lindbergh, Logging, McDonald, Quartz (3), Stillwater (2), Trout, Upper Whitefish, and Whitefish Lakes.

5.5.2 Evaluate bull trout population and habitat in Tally Lake watershed to determine potential core area status. Bull trout have been historically documented in low numbers in this lake, but there is a natural barrier on the lower reaches of the inlet stream (Logan Creek) and whether the accessible portion of Logan Creek ever provided suitable spawning and rearing habitat is uncertain. Presence of bull trout may have been only incidental, a result of upstream migration in the Stillwater River system. Verification of historical presence and abundance, as well as of historical habitat suitability, is needed to determine core area status of this water.

5.6 Identify evaluations needed to improve understanding of relationships among genetic characteristics, phenotypic traits, and local populations of bull trout.

5.6.1 Investigate status of migratory and resident life history forms of bull trout. Investigate potential existence of fluvial or resident bull trout populations in the Flathead River and Swan River tributaries, where only adfluvial migrants have previously been documented.

5.6.2 Assess hybridization threat with brook trout in the Swan River drainage. Assess significance of brook trout hybridization in the Swan River drainage and establish benchmarks to measure and/or prevent any further increase in the rate of hybridization.

6 Use all available conservation programs and regulations to protect and conserve bull trout and bull trout habitats.

6.1 Use partnerships and collaborative processes to protect, maintain, and restore functioning core areas for bull trout.

6.1.1 Support watershed group restoration efforts. Support collaborative efforts by local watershed groups to accomplish site-specific protection/restoration activities consistent with this recovery plan. The Swan River drainage is a priority because of its strong status of existing bull trout populations, the diverse mixture of public and private lands, and the pressures of rapidly expanding development. A draft total maximum daily load program is being developed in the Swan River drainage, relying upon an methodology based on assessment of road-induced sedimentation and instream sediment sources.

6.1.2 Protect habitat. Provide long-term habitat protection on State and private lands through habitat conservation plans, land exchanges, purchases, conservation easements, management plans, and other methods. Emphasis should be on identified bull trout spawning and rearing streams.

6.1.3 Support habitat protection and monitoring in British Columbia. Work collaboratively with the British Columbia Ministry of Environment and other Canadian governmental and nongovernmental entities to ensure that bull trout habitat is protected and enhanced in the Flathead River watershed upstream of the international border.

6.2 Use existing Federal authorities to conserve and restore bull trout.

6.2.1 Monitor compliance with Kerr Dam Federal Energy Regulatory Commission Order and Biological Opinion. Monitor compliance with the Order of the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (and the Biological Opinion of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service) for operations of Kerr Dam and ensure that recovery needs of bull trout are met.

6.2.2 Minimize impacts of Bigfork Dam through Federal Energy Regulatory Commission relicensing process. Minimize impacts of Bigfork Dam operations on bull trout (*e.g.*, entrainment) through the relicensing process of the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission and through compliance with Biological Opinion of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

6.2.3 Monitor compliance with Federal Columbia River Power System Biological Opinion for Hungry Horse Dam. Monitor compliance with the Biological Opinion for Federal Columbia River Power System operations of Hungry Horse Dam and evaluate effectiveness in conserving bull trout.

6.2.4 Implement Plum Creek Habitat Conservation Plan. Carry out compliance monitoring and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service commitment to adaptive management planning under the proposed Plum Creek Native Fish Habitat Conservation Plan, with emphasis on the Swan River basin due to concentrated Plum Creek Timber Company land holdings.

6.3 Evaluate enforcement of existing Federal and State habitat protection standards and regulations and evaluate their effectiveness for bull trout conservation.

6.3.1 Fully implement State and Tribal habitat protection laws. Fully implement the Montana Streamside Management Zone Law (1993), Montana Stream Protection Act (1965), Montana Natural Streambed and Land Preservation Act (1975), and Montana Water Quality Act (1997) to maximize legal protection of bull trout habitat under State law and evaluate the effectiveness of these laws in conserving bull trout habitat.

6.3.2 Encourage floodplain protection. Encourage local and Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribal governments to develop, implement, and promote restrictive regulations to protect floodplains and lakeshores in Flathead, Lake, and Missoula Counties to mitigate extensive habitat loss and stream encroachment from rural residential development throughout the Flathead River drainage. These effects and others related to development are of particular concern in watersheds that support bull trout spawning and rearing because they exacerbate temperature problems, increase nutrient loads, decrease bank stability, and alter instream and riparian habitat.

7 Assess the implementation of bull trout recovery by recovery units and revise recovery unit plans based on evaluations.

PRIEST RECOVERY SUBUNIT

1 Protect, restore, and maintain suitable habitat conditions for bull trout.

1.1 Maintain or improve water quality in bull trout core areas or potential core habitat.

1.1.1 Reduce general sediment sources. Stabilize roads, stream crossings, trails, natural landslides, and other sources of sediment delivery in the Priest River drainage, where sedimentation is especially problematic because of the prevalence of highly erodible soil types and rain-on-snow events. Priority watersheds are those with known bull trout populations, including Granite, Lion, Trapper, and Two Mouth Creeks; and the Upper Priest River and its tributaries.

1.1.2 Address forest road maintenance and hotspots. Emphasize maintenance of extensive secondary road systems of U.S. Forest Service and State lands by increased application of best management practices, with focus on remediating sediment-producing hotspots and maintaining bridges, culverts, and crossings in drainages supporting bull trout spawning and rearing. Decommission surplus forest roads, especially those that are chronic sources of sediment and/or those that are located in areas of highly erodible geological formations. Remove culverts and/or bridges on closed roads that are no longer maintained. The Idaho Department of Lands has made significant efforts in this arena, but areas that will continue to require particular attention include portions of the drainages of Hughes Fork and Indian, Kalispell, Lion, Soldier, and Two Mouth Creeks.

1.1.3 Improve maintenance along transportation corridors. Improve maintenance of all major roads along riparian corridors to reduce impacts of sediment and floodplain encroachment. When reconstruction occurs on roads that are in the floodplain, advocate

moving major problem reaches out of riparian corridors. Improve the capability of quick response for dealing with potential hazardous material spills.

1.1.4 Minimize recreational development in bull trout spawning and rearing habitat. Minimize impacts from expansion or development of new golf courses, ski areas, campgrounds, fishing access sites, and second home or other recreational developments in the corridors of bull trout spawning and rearing streams.

1.1.5 Assess and reduce nutrient input from forestry practices and lakeshore development. Assess and continue to address effects of nutrient enrichment from forestry practices and lakeshore development. Continue to monitor water quality in the Priest River basin. Focus water quality remediation efforts on rapidly implementing total maximum daily load programs for impaired water bodies that contain bull trout (section 303[d] list includes Kalispell, Trapper, and Two Mouth Creeks).

1.1.6 Implement water quality regulations. Evaluate enforcement of water quality standards and implement total maximum daily load program.

1.2 Identify barriers or sites of entrainment for bull trout and implement tasks to provide passage and eliminate entrainment.

1.2.1 Eliminate culvert barriers. Monitor stream crossings for blockages to upstream passage and replace or remove existing culverts or bridges that impede passage. Problem areas have been identified on Granite Creek, Hughes Fork, Kalispell Creek, and South Fork Granite Creek.

1.2.2 Improve instream flows. Restore connectivity and opportunities for migration by securing or improving instream flows and acquiring water rights; the highest priority should be assigned to bull trout

spawning and rearing streams. Kalispell Creek has currently been identified as one such stream with intermittent dewatering problems.

1.3 Identify impaired stream channel and riparian areas and implement tasks to restore their appropriate functions.

1.3.1 Conduct watershed problem assessments. Identify site-specific threats (problem assessment) that may be limiting bull trout in watersheds that have not already been evaluated. In particular, quantify population numbers, trends, and extent of habitat used in the following watersheds: Caribou Creek, Granite Creek, Hughes Fork, Indian Creek, Kalispell Creek, Upper Priest River, Priest River, and Soldier Creek. Assessments have been completed in Lion, Trapper, and Two Mouth Creeks.

1.3.2 Revegetate denuded riparian areas. Develop site-specific plans to promote revegetation of past riparian harvest zones (and some other stream sections lacking woody vegetation for other reasons) to ensure sufficient shade and canopy, large woody debris recruitment, riparian cover, and native vegetation to support native salmonids. Highest-priority streams are those with existing bull trout populations.

1.3.3 Improve grazing practices. Reduce negative effects of grazing with riparian fencing or improved management practices. Problems in the Priest River drainage are restricted to a few isolated locations that are not generally associated with bull trout spawning and rearing streams.

1.3.4 Restore stream channels. Conduct stream channel restoration activities, but only where similar results cannot be achieved by other, less costly and less intrusive means. Priority watersheds include the Hughes Fork downstream of Hughes Meadow.

1.3.5 Improve instream habitat. Explore opportunities to improve instream habitat by increasing amounts of large woody debris (*e.g.*, on lower Hughes Fork and Caribou, Granite, Indian, Kalispell, Lion, and Two Mouth Creeks).

1.3.6 Minimize potential stream channel degradation. Ensure that negative effects to bull trout from ongoing flood control and streambank stabilization activities (*e.g.*, riprap, dredging, channel clearing) are minimized, in part through implementing the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers 404 program and the Idaho Stream Channel Protection Act.

1.4 Operate dams to minimize negative effects on bull trout.

1.4.1 Minimize impacts of dam operations on bull trout in Priest Lake. Review operations of Priest Lake Outlet Structure and support operating recommendations that minimize effects on bull trout, including two-way fish passage and adequate instream flows.

1.4.2 Minimize impacts of Albeni Falls Dam on bull trout in the Priest River. Review Lake Pend Oreille operational concerns (*e.g.*, water level manipulation that may affect free passage or habitat quality in the lower Priest River) and include operating recommendations through Federal consultation for Lake Pend Oreille that are consistent with needs of bull trout in the Priest River system.

1.4.3 Provide upstream passage over barriers. Investigate and implement upstream fish passage at Albeni Falls Dam and over the Priest Lake Outlet Structure, as needed, to reconnect fragmented bull trout core habitat with Lake Pend Oreille.

1.5 Identify upland conditions that negatively affect bull trout habitats and implement tasks to restore appropriate functions.

1.5.1 Monitor fire effects and mitigate effects where necessary. Monitor effects from wild fires and pursue habitat restoration actions where warranted.

2 Prevent and reduce negative effects of nonnative fishes and other nonnative taxa on bull trout.

2.1 Develop, implement, and evaluate enforcement of public and private fish stocking policies to reduce stocking of nonnative fishes that affect bull trout.

2.1.1 Review fish stocking programs. Evaluate all fish-stocking programs and private and public hatchery practices to minimize the risk of further inadvertent introduction of nonnative species to the Priest River drainage.

2.1.2 Regulate private fish ponds. Reduce the risks of inadvertent introduction of nonnative fish from private fish ponds by closely regulating existing permits to ensure that only permitted species are stocked and that fish barriers are maintained and by attaching conditions to future permits.

2.1.3 Encourage development of commercial sources of westslope cutthroat trout. Support development of approved and available sources of genetically diverse native westslope cutthroat trout for private pond stocking.

2.2 Evaluate policies for preventing illegal transport and introduction of nonnative fishes.

2.2.1 Optimize enforcement of laws and policies that prohibit unauthorized fish transplant and stocking. Strengthen enforcement of existing laws and continue to work to improve the legal and policy framework for preventing unauthorized fish transplant and stocking.

2.3 Inform the public about ecosystem concerns of illegal introductions of nonnative fishes.

2.3.1 Discourage unauthorized fish introductions. Focus an intensive public education campaign on the Priest Lake basin to reduce the potential spread of illegally introduced nonnative fish species.

2.3.2 Develop bull trout education program. Develop a public information program with a broad emphasis on bull trout ecology and life history requirements and a more specific focus on regionally or locally important recovery issues.

2.4 Evaluate biological, economic, and social effects of control of nonnative fishes.

2.4.1 Develop protocols for suppressing nonnative fish. Conduct research and develop protocols to describe the most effective methods for suppressing or eradicating nonnative fish populations from waters where they negatively impact bull trout recovery, with emphasis on lake trout and brook trout in the Priest Lakes system.

2.4.2 Evaluate site-specific conflicts with introduced sport fish. Determine the site-specific level of predation, competition, and hybridization of bull trout with introduced sport fish (especially lake trout and brook trout) and take management actions to minimize the effects of those interactions, while maintaining or restoring a viable bull trout population in Priest Lake that is sufficiently large to protect the genetic integrity of the local population(s).

2.5 Implement control of nonnative fishes where found to be feasible and appropriate.

2.5.1 Experimentally remove established brook trout populations. Evaluate opportunities for experimental removal of brook trout

from selected streams. Priority watersheds include those in the Upper Priest Lake basin, particularly Rock and Ruby Creeks, and others identified as bull trout spawning and rearing streams.

2.5.2 Evaluate the potential for a barrier in the Thorofare to control the migration of nonnative fish. Investigations in Upper Priest Lake have indicated that aggressive netting could effectively control lake trout, but that rapid reinvasion by lake trout occurs from downstream Priest Lake. Risks to bull trout from the lake trout invasion currently exceed concerns over fragmentation from barriers. For this situation, consider installing a partial (perhaps seasonal or selective) fish barrier in the Thorofare between Upper Priest and Priest Lakes to protect Upper Priest Lake's vulnerable adfluvial bull trout populations.

2.6 Develop tasks to reduce negative effects of nonnative taxa on bull trout.

3 Establish fisheries management goals and objectives compatible with bull trout recovery and implement practices to achieve goals.

3.1 Develop and implement State and Tribal native fish management plans integrating adaptive research.

3.1.1 Implement adaptive management to address lake trout in Lake Pend Oreille and Priest Lake. Continue assessing predator–prey interactions in Lake Pend Oreille and Priest Lake, with emphasis on lake trout. Continue analysis of options for using commercial-type fishing gear to reduce lake trout numbers. In Priest Lake, implement actions to reduce lake trout numbers.

3.1.2 Aggressively protect remaining native species complexes. Maximize efforts to suppress and, if possible, eliminate lake trout from Upper Priest Lake. Consider all potential methods to negate lake trout immigration, including design and strategies for funding and installing a downstream fish barrier to prevent immigration.

Manage Upper Priest Lake to minimize nonnative fish populations by using aggressive protective regulations for native species, liberal limits on nonnatives, and information and education campaigns.

3.2 Evaluate and prevent overharvest and incidental angling mortality of bull trout.

3.2.1 Minimize unintentional bull trout mortality. The Idaho Department of Fish and Game and the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife should continue to develop and implement sport angling regulations and fisheries management plans, guidelines, and policies that minimize incidental mortality of bull trout, particularly in the Priest Lakes and the Priest River.

3.2.2 Evaluate enforcement of angling regulations and oversee scientific research. Ensure compliance with angling regulations and scientific collection policies and target enforcement efforts at known bull trout spawning and staging areas.

3.2.3 Implement angler education efforts. Inform anglers about special regulations (*e.g.*, on Upper Priest Lake) and how to identify bull trout and reduce hooking mortality of bull trout caught incidentally in the Priest River system.

3.2.4 Solicit information from commercial guides. Develop a reporting system to collect information on bull trout that are caught and released from charter boats and by commercial fishing guides on Priest Lake.

3.3 Evaluate potential effects of introduced fishes and associated sport fisheries on bull trout recovery and implement tasks to minimize negative effects on bull trout.

3.3.1 Discourage illegally introduced sport fish populations. Adopt an aggressive approach to angling regulations and fisheries

management that actively avoids legitimizing fisheries for illegally established populations of nonnative fish in the future and that supports minimizing the presence of and/or removing illegally introduced fish.

3.4 Evaluate effects of existing and proposed sport fishing regulations on bull trout.

3.4.1 Encourage brook trout harvest. Develop and maintain regulations that prescribe liberal bag limits on brook trout throughout the Priest River watershed.

4 Characterize, conserve, and monitor genetic diversity and gene flow among local populations of bull trout.

4. Incorporate conservation of genetic and phenotypic attributes of bull trout into recovery and management plans.

4.1.1 Conduct genetic inventory. Conduct coordinated genetic inventory and protect genetic diversity throughout the recovery subunit, with emphasis on analyzing bull trout from the Upper Priest River watershed where hybridization with brook trout presents the most imminent threat.

4.2 Maintain existing opportunities for gene flow among bull trout populations.

4.3 Develop genetic management plans and guidelines for appropriate use of transplantation and artificial propagation.

4.3.1 Implement actions to develop a refugia for Priest Lakes. Develop plans for captive propagation or other methods of maintaining genetic viability of declining bull trout population in Priest Lakes.

5 Conduct research and monitoring to implement and evaluate bull trout recovery activities, consistent with an adaptive management approach using feedback from implemented, site-specific recovery tasks.

5.1 Design and implement a standardized monitoring program to assess the effectiveness of recovery efforts affecting bull trout and their habitats.

5.1.1 Develop standardized monitoring procedures. Develop standardized strategies for bull trout redd counts and juvenile monitoring to track bull trout populations in the Priest River watershed, including Gold Creek, Hughes Fork, Trapper Creek, and Upper Priest River. Apply these strategies throughout the Clark Fork Recovery Unit.

5.1.2 Increase monitoring of adfluvial bull trout populations in Priest Lakes. Increase monitoring of adfluvial populations to determine population status, distribution, movement, and seasonality of use of different habitat types by adult and subadult bull trout in and between the lakes.

5.1.3 Increase lake water quality monitoring. Support increased water quality monitoring efforts in Priest Lakes to protect existing high standards and to better understand potential linkages between water quality, lakeshore development, and bull trout requirements.

5.2 Conduct research evaluating relationships among bull trout distribution and abundance, bull trout habitat, and recovery tasks.

5.2.1 Identify suitable unoccupied habitat. Identify suitable unoccupied habitat, if any, in the Priest Lake watershed that might be reconnected or enhanced to increase recruitment of bull trout to the system. Within five years, complete a comprehensive list of all known passage barriers that prevent upstream-migrating bull trout from accessing suitable habitat. Consider establishing resident bull

trout populations upstream of natural barriers to provide a genetic reserve.

5.2.2 Map spawning habitat. Develop a comprehensive map of primary tributary reaches of bull trout spawning for focusing habitat protection and recovery efforts.

5.2.3 Evaluate core area classification status. The classification of the Priest Lakes and Priest River as a primary core area should be reviewed to determine whether recovery of bull trout abundance to a level consistent with primary core status (*i.e.*, 1,000 adult fish) is feasible.

5.3 Conduct evaluations of the adequacy and effectiveness of current and past best management practices in maintaining or achieving habitat conditions conducive to bull trout recovery.

5.4 Evaluate effects of diseases and parasites on bull trout and develop and implement strategies to minimize negative effects.

5.5 Develop and conduct research and monitoring studies to improve information concerning the distribution and status of bull trout.

5.6 Identify evaluations needed to improve understanding of relationships among genetic characteristics, phenotypic traits, and local populations of bull trout.

5.6.1 Investigate status of migratory and resident life history forms. Investigate potential existence of fluvial or resident bull trout populations in the Priest River tributaries where adfluvial migrants previously dominated.

5.6.2 Assess hybridization threat with brook trout in the Upper Priest River watershed. Assess significance of brook trout hybridization in the Upper Priest River watershed and establish benchmarks to

measure and/or prevent any further increase in the rate of hybridization.

6 Use all available conservation programs and regulations to protect and conserve bull trout and bull trout habitats.

6.1 Use partnerships and collaborative processes to protect, maintain, and restore functioning core areas for bull trout.

6.1.1 Support watershed group restoration efforts. Support collaborative efforts by local watershed groups (*e.g.*, Priest Lake Watershed Advisory Group) to accomplish site-specific protection/restoration activities throughout the basin, consistent with this recovery plan and with Cumulative Watershed Effects Assessments already completed in the Binarch, Indian, Kalispell, Lion, Quartz, Reeder, Trapper, and Two Mouth Creeks and in the Upper West Branch and Lower West Branch Priest River watersheds.

6.1.2 Protect habitat. Provide long-term habitat protection on State and private lands through habitat conservation plans, land exchanges, purchase, conservation easements, management plans, and other methods. Initial emphasis should be on identified bull trout spawning and rearing streams in the Upper Priest Lake watershed.

6.1.3 Support habitat protection and monitoring in the Priest Lake State Forest. Work collaboratively with the Idaho Department of Lands and other State agencies and nongovernmental entities to ensure that bull trout habitat is protected and enhanced in drainages on the east side of the Priest Lake watershed (where tributary habitat is generally more suitable for bull trout than on the west side due to underlying geology).

6.1.4 Develop Priest Lakes partnerships. Initiate a Citizens Advisory Group of anglers, homeowners, stakeholders, and other interested parties to assess potential solutions to the immigration of lake trout

into Upper Priest Lake. Work with local organizations and individuals to establish fisheries management objectives for Priest Lakes that accommodate the potential to reach bull trout recovery goals and minimize the migration of lake trout upstream through the Thorofare into the Upper Priest River watershed. Include discussion of potential options for lake trout reduction in Priest Lake.

6.2 Use existing Federal authorities to conserve and restore bull trout.

6.2.1 Monitor compliance with the Biological Opinion for the Federal Columbia River Power System. Monitor compliance with Biological Opinion of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS 2000) (Federal Columbia River Power System) related to operation of Albeni Falls Dam on the outlet of Lake Pend Oreille.

6.3 Evaluate enforcement of existing Federal and State habitat protection standards and regulations and evaluate their effectiveness for bull trout conservation.

6.3.1 Fully implement existing State habitat protection laws. Fully implement the Idaho Forest Practices Act, Idaho Lake Protection Act, Idaho Stream Channel Protection Act, Washington Hydraulic Permit approval, Water Quality Standards for Surface Water of the State of Washington (WAC 173-201a), and Washington Forest and Fish program to maximize legal protection of bull trout habitat under State law. Evaluate the effectiveness of these laws and programs in conserving bull trout habitat.

6.3.2 Encourage floodplain protection. Encourage local and State governments to develop, implement, and promote restrictive regulations to protect floodplains and lakeshores in Boundary and Bonner Counties in Idaho and Pend Oreille County in Washington to mitigate habitat loss and stream encroachment from rural residential development throughout the Priest River drainage.

These and other effects of development are of particular concern in watersheds that support bull trout spawning and rearing as they exacerbate temperature problems, increase nutrient loads, decrease bank stability, and alter instream and riparian habitat.

7 *Assess the implementation of bull trout recovery by recovery units and revise recovery unit plans based on evaluations.*

IMPLEMENTATION SCHEDULE

The Implementation Schedule that follows describes recovery task priorities, task numbers, task descriptions, duration of tasks, potential or participating responsible parties, total cost estimate, and estimates for the next five years, if available, as well as comments. These tasks, when accomplished, will lead to recovery of bull trout in the coterminous United States.

Parties with authority, responsibility, or expressed interest to implement a specific recovery task are identified in the Implementation Schedule. Listing a responsible party does not imply that prior approval has been given or require that party to participate or expend any funds. However, willing participants will benefit by demonstrating that their budget submission or funding request is for a recovery task identified in an approved recovery plan and is, therefore, part of a coordinated recovery effort to recover bull trout. In addition, section 7 (a)(1) of the Endangered Species Act directs all Federal agencies to use their authorities to further the purposes of the Act by implementing programs for the conservation of threatened or endangered species.

Following are definitions to column headings and keys to abbreviations and acronyms used in the Implementation Schedule:

Priority No.: All priority 1 tasks are listed first, followed by priority 2 and priority 3 tasks.

Priority 1: All actions that must be taken to prevent extinction or to prevent the species from declining irreversibly in the foreseeable future.

Priority 2: All actions that must be taken to prevent a significant decline in species population or habitat quality or to prevent some other significant negative impact short of extinction.

Priority 3: All other actions necessary to provide for full recovery (or reclassification) of the species.

Task Number and Task Description: Recovery tasks as numbered in the recovery outline. Refer to the action narrative for task descriptions.

Task Duration: Expected number of years to complete the corresponding task. Study designs can incorporate multiple tasks, which, when combined, may reduce the time needed for completion.

Responsible or Participating Party: Federal, State, Tribal, County, local, or Canadian government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, or universities with responsibility or capability to fund, authorize, or carry out the corresponding recovery task. The following is a list of acronyms used to identify these parties throughout the implementation schedule:

Canadian Government:

BCMWLAP British Columbia Ministry of Water, Land, and Air Protection

Federal Agencies:

BLM	Bureau of Land Management
BOR	U.S. Bureau of Reclamation
BPA	Bonneville Power Administration
COE	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
FERC	Federal Energy Regulatory Commission
NMFS	National Marine Fisheries Service
NPS	National Park Service
NRCS	National Resources Conservation Service
USDOT	U.S. Department of Transportation
USEPA	U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

USFS	U.S. Forest Service
USFWS	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service

State Agencies:

IBODS	Idaho Bureau of Disaster Services
IDEQ	Idaho Department of Environmental Quality
IDFG	Idaho Department of Fish and Game
IDL	Idaho Department of Lands
IDPR	Idaho Department of Parks and Recreation
IDWR	Idaho Department of Water Resources
ITD	Idaho Transportation Department
IWRB	Idaho Water Resources Board
MDEQ	Montana Department of Environmental Quality
MDHES	Montana Department of Health and Environmental Sciences
MDNRC	Montana Department of Natural Resources and Conservation
MDOJ	Montana Department of Justice, Natural Resource Damages
MDOT	Montana Department of Transportation
MDSL	Montana Department of State Lands
MFWP	Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
WADNR	Washington Department of Natural Resources
WADOE	Washington Department of Ecology
WDFW	Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife

Others:

ARCO	Atlantic Richfield Corporation
BNSFR	Burlington Northern and Santa Fe Railway
CSKT	Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes
FAID	Flathead Agency Irrigation District
FBC	Flathead Basin Commission
FLBS	Flathead Lake Biological Station

IDWAG	Idaho Watershed Advisory Group
KT	Kalispel Tribe
LPOWAG	Lake Pend Oreille Watershed Advisory Group
MBTRT	Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team
MBTSG	Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group
MPC	Montana Power Company
PBTTAT	Panhandle Bull Trout Technical Advisory Team
PacifiC	PacifiCorp
PCTC	Plum Creek Timber Company
PPLMT	Pennsylvania Power and Light of Montana (formerly MPC)
TU	Trout Unlimited
UCFRBSC	Upper Clark Fork River Basin Steering Committee
WAGs	Idaho Watershed Advisory Groups

Boldface type indicates the agency or agencies that have the lead role for task implementation and coordination, though not necessarily sole responsibility.

Cost Estimates: Cost estimates are rough approximations and are only provided for general guidance. Total costs are estimated for the duration of the task, are itemized annually for the next five years, and includes estimates of expenditures by local, Tribal, State, and Federal governments and by private business and individuals.

An asterisk (*) in the total cost column indicates that these tasks are part of normal agency responsibilities under existing authorities.

Double asterisk (**) in the total cost column indicates that estimated costs for these tasks are not determinable at this time. Input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these tasks.

Triple asterisk (***) indicates costs are combined with or embedded within other related tasks.

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
1	1. 1. 1	Reduce general sediment sources	25	**USFS**, BLM, Counties, USEPA, MDNRC, MDOT, NRCS, PCTC, USDOT	*						Ongoing[2]
1	1. 1. 3	Clean up mine waste	25	**MDEQ**, BLM, USEPA, MDNRC, PCTC, USFS	*						Ongoing administrative costs
1	1. 1. 4	Implement Atlantic Richfield Corporation mitigation	25	**MDEQ**, USEPA, MDNRC, MDOJ (NRD), MFWP	*						Ongoing
1	1. 1. 7	Assess and mitigate nonpoint thermal pollution	25	**EPA**, BLM, MDEQ, MDNRC, MFWP, NRCS, USFS	*						CWA required costs
1	1. 1. 9	Implement water quality regulations	25	**MDEQ**, Counties, USEPA, USFS, USFWS	*						CWA required costs

[2] Ongoing tasks are currently being implemented, as part of normal agency responsibilities that may benefit bull trout. Because these actions are not specifically being done to address bull trout conservation, they are not included in the cost estimates. Some of these efforts may be occurring at reduced levels and/or in only a small portion of the watershed.

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
1	1. 2. 1	Eliminate entrainment in diversions	15	**MDNRC**, **MFWP,** BLM, PCTC, NRCS, USFS, USFWS	1,500	100	100	100	100	100	Ongoing
1	1. 2. 2	Provide fish passage around diversions	15	**MDNRC**, **MFWP**, BLM, PCTC, NRCS, USFS, USFWS	750	50	50	50	50	50	Ongoing
1	1. 2. 3	Eliminate culvert barriers	25	**USFS**, BLM, Counties, MDNRC, MDOT, MFWP, PCTC, USDOT	1,250	50	50	50	50	50	Ongoing
1	1. 2. 5	Improve instream flows	25	**MDNRC**, **MFWP**, USFS, TU	*						Ongoing
1	1. 4. 3	Operate Milltown Dam to minimize impact on native fish	25	**MPC**, USEPA, MFWP	250	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing
1	1. 5. 2	Monitor fire effects and mitigate effects where necessary	25	**MDNRC**, **USFS**	*						Ongoing administrative costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
1	3. 3. 1	Evaluate site-specific conflicts with introduced sport fish	25	**MFWP**,**USFWS**, USFS	*						Ongoing administrative costs
1	5. 2. 1	Identify suitable unoccupied habitat	5	**MFWP**, **USFS, USFWS**, MDNRC, PCTC	500	100	100	100	100	100	Ongoing
1	6. 2. 4	Implement Plum Creek Habitat Conservation Plan	30	**USFWS**, PCTC	900	30	30	30	30	30	Ongoing 30-year agreement
1	6. 3. 2	Encourage floodplain protection	25	**Counties**, MDEQ, MDNRC, MFWP	250	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing
2	1. 1. 2	Upgrade problem roads	25	**USFS, MDNRC, PCTC**, BLM, Counties, MDOT, USDOT	*						Ongoing administrative costs
2	1. 1. 6	Restore fish passage at Milltown Dam	10	**FERC, MDOJ**, USEPA, MFWP, MPC, USFWS	1,000	100	100	100	100	100	FERC relicensing issue
2	1. 1. 8	Reduce nutrient input	25	**MDEQ**, USEPA, NRCS, PCTC, USFS	*						CWA required costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	1. 2. 4	Restore connectivity over other manmade barriers	5	**MFWP,** USFS	***						See related tasks 1.2.2 and 1.2.3
2	1. 3. 1	Conduct watershed problem assessments	25	**MFWP**, **USFS**, BLM, MDNRC, NRCS, PCTC,	***						See related tasks 1.1.7 and 1.1.9
2	1. 3. 2	Prioritize actions on waters with restoration potential	25	**MFWP**, **USFS**, USFWS	125	5	5	5	5	5	Ongoing
2	1. 3. 3	Revegetate denuded riparian areas	25	**BLM, USFS, *MDNRC, NRCS, PCTC**, MDOT, USEPA, MFWP, USDOT	625	25	25	25	25	25	Ongoing
2	1. 3. 4	Improve grazing practices	25	**USFS**, BLM, USEPA, MDNRC, MFWP, NRCS, PCTC	*						Ongoing administrative costs
2	1. 3. 5	Restore stream channels	25	**USFS**, BLM, MDNRC, MFWP, NRCS, PCTC	*						Ongoing
2	1. 3. 6	Improve instream habitat	25	**USFS**, BLM, MDNRC, MFWP, NRCS, PCTC	*						Ongoing

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	1. 3. 8	Manage beaver to function naturally in maintaining wetlands	25	**MFWP**, **USFS**, BLM, MDNRC, PCTC, NRCS	125	5	5	5	5	5	Ongoing
2	1. 3. 11	Mitigate for transportation corridor encroachment on streams	25	**MDOT**,**USDOT**, MFWP, USFS	*						Ongoing administrative costs
2	1. 4. 1	Reduce reservoir operational impacts	10	**MDNRC**, MFWP, USFS	250	25	25	25	25	25	Ongoing
2	1. 4. 2	Provide instream flow downstream of dams	10	**MDNRC**, MFWP, USFS	250	25	25	25	25	25	Ongoing
2	1. 4. 4	Evaluate fish passage at Painted Rocks Dam	5	**MDNRC**, **MFWP**	50	10	10	10	10	10	
2	1. 5. 1	Mitigate for legacy effects of mining-related timber management practices	25	**USFS**, BLM, MDNRC	*						Ongoing administrative costs
2	2. 1. 2	Regulate private fish ponds	25	**MFWP**	*						Ongoing fish management costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	2. 1. 3	Encourage development of commercial sources of westslope cutthroat trout	5	**MFWP**	25	5	5	5	5	5	
2	2. 3. 1	Discourage unauthorized fish introductions	25	**MFWP**, TU, USFS, USFWS	*						Ongoing administrative costs
2	2. 3. 2	Develop bull trout education program	15	**MFWP**, **USFWS**	150	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing, costs part of statewide program
2	2. 5. 1	Experimentally remove established brook trout populations	25	**MFWP**, BLM, USFS, USFWS	625	25	25	25	25	25	Ongoing
2	2. 5. 2	Suppress northern pike in Clearwater Lakes chain	25	**MFWP**	250	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing
2	2. 5. 3	Reduce brown trout numbers in portions of mainstem rivers	25	**MFWP**	250	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	2. 6. 1	Evaluate bull trout–brown trout interaction	10	**MFWP**, USFS, USFWS	***						See related task 2.5.3
2	3. 1. 1	Implement adaptive management of native fish management plans	25	**MFWP**, BLM, USEPA, FERC, MDEQ, MDNRC, MDOT, PCTC,, USDOT, USFS, USFWS	*						Ongoing administrative costs
2	3. 1. 2	Aggressively protect remaining native species complexes	25	**MFWP**, **USFWS**, BLM, PCTC, USFS	*						Ongoing
2	3. 2. 1	Minimize unintentional mortality of bull trout	25	**MFWP**, USFWS	***						See related tasks 3.1.1. and 3.2.1
2	3. 2. 2	Evaluate enforcement of angling regulations and oversee scientific research	25	**MFWP**, USFWS	***						See related tasks 3.2.3 and 3.4.1
2	3. 2. 3	Implement angler education efforts	25	**MFWP**, USFWS	***						See related task 3.2.2

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	3. 4. 1	Evaluate effects of existing and proposed angling regulations on bull trout in heavily fished waters	25	**MFWP, USFWS**	***						See related tasks 3.2.2 and 3.2.3
2	4. 1. 1	Conduct genetic inventory	10	**MFWP**, USFS, USFWS	***						See related task in Chapter 1 of Recovery Plan
2	5. 2. 2	Investigate bull trout movement and distribution	25	**MFWP**, BLM, PCTC, USFS, USFWS	2,500	100	100	100	100	100	Ongoing
2	5. 2. 4	Map spawning habitat	5	**MFWP**, USFS, USFWS	100	20	20	20	20	20	Ongoing
2	5. 2. 6	Evaluate water temperature as a limiting factor	10	**MFWP**, USEPA, MDEQ, MDNRC, USFS, USFWS	250	25	25	25	25	25	Ongoing
2	5. 3. 3	Expand monitoring of forestry best management practices	25	**MDNRC**, MDEQ, MFWP, PCTC, USFS	***						See related task 1.3.4

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	5. 3. 4	Protect groundwater inflow sources	25	**MDEQ**, MDNRC, MFWP, NRCS, PCTC, USFS	*						Ongoing administrative costs
2	5. 6. 2	Research origin of migratory bull trout at Milltown Dam	3	**MPC**, **MFWP**	150	50	50	50			3-year project
2	6. 1. 1	Support watershed group restoration efforts	25	**MFWP**, **USFS, USFWS**, BLM, USEPA, MDEQ, MDNRC, NRCS, PCTC, TU	*						See related tasks 1.3.1 and 1.3.2
2	6. 1. 2	Protect habitat	25	**USFS**, BLM, MDNRC, MFWP, NRCS, PCTC, USFWS, TU	*						Costs will be evaluated through task 6.1.1
2	6. 1. 3	Integrate watershed restoration efforts on public and private lands	25	**USFS**, **USFWS**, BLM, MDNRC, MFWP, NRCS, PCTC, TU	625	25	25	25	25	25	Ongoing
2	6. 1. 4	Develop strategy for implementation participation	5	**USFWS**, MFWP	125	25	25	25	25	25	

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	6. 2. 3	Complete Federal Energy Regulatory Commission licensing of Milltown Dam	6	**FERC**, MPC, USFWS	*						Ongoing administrative costs
2	6. 3. 1	Fully implement State habitat protection laws	25	**MDNRC**, MFWP, PCTC	*						Ongoing State administrative and regulatory costs
3	1. 1. 5	Monitor McDonald gold mine	10	**MDEQ**, MDNRC, MFWP	50	5	5	5	5	5	Ongoing
3	1. 1. 10	Minimize recreational development in bull trout spawning and rearing habitat	25	**Counties, MFWP, MDNRC, USFS**, USFWS	*						Costs associated with land use planning
3	1. 2. 6	Consider fish salvage, as needed	5	**MFWP**, USFS, USFWS	25	5	5	5	5	5	
3	1. 2. 7	Consider passage around natural barriers	10	**MFWP**, **USFWS**, USFS	***						See related task 1.2.4

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
3	1. 3. 7	Minimize potential stream channel degradation	25	**Counties**, **MDNRC**, MDOT, MFWP, USDOT, USFS, USFWS	*						Ongoing administrative costs
3	1. 3. 9	Reduce riparian firewood harvest	25	**USFS**	*						Ongoing administrative and planning costs
3	1. 3. 10	Reduce impacts from campsite use	25	**USFS**, BLM, MDNRC, PCTC	*						Ongoing administrative and planning costs
3	1. 3. 12	Reduce impacts to Foster Creek	5	**DOL (Job Corps)**, MFWP, USFS, USFWS	50	10	10	10	10	10	
3	2. 1. 1	Review fish stocking programs	25	**MFWP**, USFS, USFWS	***						See related task 2.2.1
3	3. 2. 4	Solicit information from commercial guides	10	**MFWP**, USFS, USFWS	*						Routine administrative/ planning costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
3	5. 2. 3	Evaluate importance of contributing waters	25	**MFWP**, USFS, USFWS	250	10	10	10	10	10	
3	5. 2. 5	Coordinate monitoring of fish movement	25	**MFWP**, AVISTA, IDFG, USFWS	***						See related task 5.2.2
3	5. 3. 1	Develop and implement best management practices for managing water diversions	25	**MDNRC**, MFWP, NRCS, USFS, USFWS	*						Ongoing administrative costs
3	5. 3. 2	Implement best management practices for grazing in riparian zones	25	**MDNRC**, MFWP, PCTC, NRCS, USFS, USFWS	***						See related task 1.3.4
3	5. 4. 1	Monitor fish health in private hatcheries	25	**MFWP**, USFWS	*						Ongoing State fish health costs
3	5. 4. 2	Prevent spread of fish pathogens	25	**MFWP**, **USFWS**	*						See related task 2.2.1
3	5. 4. 3	Evaluate effects of whirling disease on bull trout	10	**MFWP**, USFWS	500	50	50	50	50	50	Ongoing

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
3	5. 6. 1	Investigate status of migratory and resident life history forms	10	**MFWP**, **USFWS**, USFS	***						See related task 5.2.2

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
1	1. 1. 1	Reduce general sediment sources	25	**USFS**, Counties, CSKT, FERC, IDEQ, IDFG, IDL, ITD, IDWAG, MDNRC, MDOT, MFWP, NRCS, USFWS, USDOT	*						Ongoing administrative costs
1	1. 1. 5	Implement ARCO mitigation on Flathead Indian Reservation	25	**CSKT**	*						Ongoing
1	1. 1. 8	Implement water quality regulations	25	**IDEQ, MDEQ**, Counties, USEPA, USFS, USFWS	*						CWA required costs
1	1. 2. 1	Eliminate entrainment in diversions	25	**CSKT, IDFG, IDWR, MDNRC, MFWP,** FERC, NRCS, USFWS	1,250	50	50	50	50	50	Ongoing
1	1. 2. 2	Provide fish passage around diversions	25	**CSKT, IDFG, IDWR, MDNRC, MFWP,** AVISTA, City of E. Hope, NRCS, USFWS	750	50	50	50	50	50	Ongoing
1	1. 2. 3	Eliminate culvert barriers	25	**USFS**, Counties, IDFG, IDL, ITD, MDNRC, MDOT, USDOT	250	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
1	1. 2. 5	Improve instream flows	25	**CSKT, MDNRC, MFWP, IWRB**, IDFG,	*						Ongoing
1	1. 4. 1	Evaluate and restore upstream fish passage at mainstem Clark Fork and Pend Oreille River dams	10	**AVISTA, FERC, PPLMT,** COE, CSKT, IDFG, MFWP, USFWS	9,500	950	950	950	950	950	Ongoing - 45 years through FERC license
1	1. 4. 2	Provide safe passage downstream through dams and reservoirs	45[3]	**AVISTA, FERC, PPLMT**, COE, CSKT, IDFG, MFWP, USFWS	***						Ongoing - included in task 1.4.1 above
1	1. 4. 3	Reduce reservoir operational impacts	45	**AVISTA, FERC, PPLMT**, COE, CSKT, IDEQ, IDFG, MDEQ, MFWP, USFWS	***						Ongoing - included in task 1.4.1 above

[3]The Avista Settlement Agreement for relicensing Noxon Rapids and Cabinet Gorge Dams will provide over $1.25 million dollars per year for 45 years to restore and improve habitat and fish passage under Washington Water Power's Native Salmonid Restoration Plan (Washington Water Power Company 1998).

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
1	1. 4. 9	Avoid gas supersaturation	10	**AVISTA, EPA, FERC,** CSKT, IDEQ, IDFG, MDEQ, MFWP, MPC, USFWS	*						Ongoing - approx. $10–20M permanent fix at Cabinet Gorge and Noxon Dams
1	3. 3. 1	Evaluate site-specific conflicts with introduced sport fish	5	**CSKT, IDFG, MFWP, USFWS**, AVISTA	1,000	200	200	200	200	200	Ongoing - 5 years through FERC license
1	5. 2. 1	Identify suitable unoccupied habitat	5	**CSKT, IDFG, MFWP, USFS, USFWS**, AVISTA	500	100	100	100	100	100	Ongoing
1	6. 1. 2	Protect habitat	25	**AVISTA, CSKT, FERC**, **IDFG, IDL, IDWR, MFWP**, COE, NRCS, USFS, USFWS	17,500	700	700	700	700	700	45 years through FERC license
1	6. 2. 1	Monitor compliance with Avista FERC Settlement Agreement	25	**AVISTA, FERC, USFWS**, **IDFG**, IDEQ, MDEQ, MFWP, TU, USFS	***						Ongoing - See related tasks

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
1	6. 2. 2	Evaluate existing FERC license conditions at Thompson Falls Dam	10	**FERC**, **USFWS,** IDEQ, IDFG, MDEQ, MFWP, PPLMT, TU, USFS	100	10	10	10	10	10	
1	6. 2. 3	Implement FERC license conditions for Kerr Dam	25	**CSKT, FERC**, ***USFWS,** MDEQ, MFWP, TU, USFS	***						Ongoing - See related tasks
1	6. 2. 4	Federal Columbia River Power System Biological Opinion	25	**USFWS**, IDEQ, IDFG, MDEQ, MFWP, TU, USFS	*						Ongoing administrative costs
1	6. 3. 1	Fully implement State and Tribal habitat protection laws	25	**CSKT, IDL, MDNRC,** MFWP, IDEQ, IDWR	*						Ongoing routine administrative costs
1	6. 3. 2	Encourage floodplain protection	25	**Counties**, COE, USEPA, IDFG, IDEQ, IDL, MDEQ, MDNRC, MFWP	250	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing
2	1. 1. 2	Upgrade problem roads	25	**USFS, MDNRC, PCTC,** Counties, MDOT, USDOT	*						Ongoing administrative costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	1. 1. 3	Clean up mine waste	25	**IDEQ, MDEQ**, IDWAG, USEPA, USFS, Private Parties	*						Ongoing administrative costs
2	1. 1. 6	Assess and mitigate nonpoint thermal pollution	25	**EPA**, CSKT, IDEQ, MDEQ, NRCS	*						
2	1. 2. 4	Mitigate Trestle Creek flume impacts	5	**IDFG, IDWR**	50	10	10	10	10	10	
2	1. 3. 1	Conduct watershed problem assessments	10	**CSKT, IDEQ, IDFG, MFWP**, IDL, NRCS, USFS, USFWS	*						Ongoing management/ administrative costs
2	1. 3. 2	Revegetate denuded riparian areas	25	**AVISTA, CSKT, FERC, USFS,** IDFG, IDL, MFWP, NRCS, USFWS, TU	675	25	25	25	25	25	45 years through FERC license
2	1. 3. 3	Improve grazing practices	25	**BLM, MDNRC, NRCS, PCTC, USFS**, CSKT, MFWP	*						Ongoing administrative/ planning costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	1. 3. 4	Restore stream channels	25	**IDFG, MFWP, USFS,** AVISTA, CSKT, FERC, NRCS, TU, USFWS	***						See related task 1.1.3
2	1. 3. 5	Improve instream habitat	25	**USFS**, AVISTA, BPA, FERC, IDFG, IDL, MDNRC, MFWP, NRCS	***						Ongoing; see related task 1.1.3
2	1. 3. 6	Minimize potential stream channel degradation	25	**Counties, IBODS, MDNRC**, COE, CSKT, IDFG, IDWAG, IDWR, ITD, MDEQ, MDOT, MFWP	*						Ongoing/ management /administrative costs
2	1. 4. 4	Research and recommend instream flows and minimum pools on the Flathead Agency Irrigation District	5	**CSKT**, BIA, USFWS	50	10	10	10	10	10	Section 7 consultation
2	1. 4. 5	Provide instream flow downstream of dams	10	**AVISTA, COE, FERC**, **IWRB, PPLMT**, IDEQ, IDFG, USFWS	*						45 years through FERC license

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	1. 4. 6	Research and recommend instream flow in lower Flathead River	5	**CSKT, FERC**	*						Ongoing/part of task 1.4.5
2	1. 4. 7	Maintain passage through alluvial fans in Lake Pend Oreille	25	**AVISTA, COE, IDFG**	250	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing
2	1. 4. 8	Assess impact of Lake Pend Oreille water levels on kokanee salmon	10	**IDFG**, BPA, COE	500	50	50	50	50	50	Ongoing
2	1. 5. 1	Monitor fire effects and mitigate effects where necessary	25	**IDL, MDNRC, USFS**	*						Ongoing/ routine administrative costs
2	2. 1. 2	Regulate private fish ponds	25	**CSKT, IDFG,MFWP**	*						Ongoing/ routine administrative costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	2. 1. 3	Encourage development of commercial sources of westslope cutthroat trout	5	**CSKT, IDFG, MFWP**	*						Ongoing fish management costs
2	2. 2. 1	Optimize enforcement of laws and policies that prohibit unauthorized fish transplant and stocking	25	**CSKT, IDFG, MFWP, USFWS, USFS**	*						Ongoing fish management costs
2	2. 3. 1	Discourage unauthorized fish introductions	25	**CSKT, IDFG, MFWP**, AVISTA, MDNRC, TU, USFWS	*						Ongoing fish management costs
2	2. 3. 2	Develop bull trout education program	15	**Avista, CSKT, IDFG, MFWP, TU, USFWS**	150	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing/part of statewide program
2	2. 5. 1	Experimentally remove established brook trout populations	25	**CSKT, IDFG, MFWP,** AVISTA, FERC, USFWS	625	25	25	25	25	25	Ongoing

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	2. 5. 2	Suppress lake trout in Lake Pend Oreille	10	**IDFG**, USFWS	500	50	50	50	50	50	
2	2. 5. 3	Suppress brown trout in Bull River	10	**MFWP**, AVISTA, FERC, USFWS	100	10	10	10	10	10	
2	3. 1. 1	Implement adaptive management of native fish management plans	25	**CSKT, IDFG, MFWP**, USFWS	*						Ongoing fish management costs
2	3. 1. 2	Implement Avista Native Salmonid Restoration Plan	25	**AVISTA**, IDFG, FERC, MFWP, USFWS	2,500	100	100	100	100	100	Ongoing
2	3. 2. 1	Minimize unintentional mortality of bull trout	25	**CSKT, IDFG, MFWP**	*						Ongoing routine fish management costs
2	3. 2. 2	Evaluate enforcement of angling regulations and oversee scientific research	25	**CSKT, IDFG, MFWP,** AVISTA, USFWS	2,500	100	100	100	100	100	45 years through FERC license

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	3. 2. 3	Implement angler education efforts	25	**CSKT, IDFG, MFWP,** AVISTA, TU, USFWS	***						Partially included in task 3.2.2 above
2	3. 3. 2	Regulate mainstem reservoirs to inhibit reproduction of nonnative fish	45	**AVISTA, FERC**, IDFG, MFWP, USFWS	*						Ongoing through FERC license
2	3. 4. 1	Evaluate opportunities for regulated bull trout fisheries	25	**CSKT, MFWP, IDFG, USFWS**	***						See related task 3.2.2
2	4. 1. 1	Conduct genetic inventory	10	**CSKT, IDFG, MFWP,** AVISTA, FERC, UM, USFWS	*						See related task in Chapter 1 of Recovery Plan
2	5. 2. 3	Investigate bull trout movement and distribution	25	**CSKT, IDFG, MFWP**, AVISTA, FERC, USFWS	1,250	50	50	50	50	50	Costs part of task 1.4.1

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	5. 2. 5	Research origin of bull trout that migrate to Cabinet Gorge Dam	5	**IDFG, MFWP**, AVISTA, FERC, USFWS	*						See related tasks 5.2.3 and 1.4.1.
2	5. 3. 1	Evaluate efficacy of trap/transport project	10	**IDFG, MFWP**, AVISTA, FERC, USFWS	*						See related task 1.4.1
2	5. 4. 2	Prevent spread of fish pathogens	25	**IDFG, MFWP, USFWS**, CSKT	*						Ongoing fish management costs
2	5. 5. 1	Evaluate Middle Fork East River	5	**IDFG, IDL**, USFWS	250	50	50	50	50	50	
2	6. 1. 1	Support watershed group restoration efforts	25	**AVISTA, CSKT, IDFG, MFWP, USFS, USFWS**, FERC, IDEQ, IDL, IDWAG, MDNRC, NRCS,	*						Meets CWA requirements
2	6. 2. 5	Expedite Flathead Agency Irrigation District Biological Opinion	5	**BIA**, **USFWS**, CSKT	*						Ongoing administration costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	6. 2. 6	Implement Plum Creek Habitat Conservation Plan	30	**USFWS**, PCTC	***						See task 6.2.4 for Upper Clark Fork Subunit
3	1. 1. 4	Evaluate and, if necessary, mitigate impacts from Rock Creek Mine	25	**MDEQ**, IDFG, MFWP, Sterling Mining Co. , USFS, USFWS	*						Ongoing, administrative costs
3	1. 1. 7	Reduce nutrient input	25	**CSKT, IDEQ,MDEQ**, USEPA, NRCS	*						Ongoing operations/ administrative costs
3	1. 1. 9	Minimize recreational development in bull trout spawning and rearing habitat	25	**County, IDL, MDNRC, MFWP, USFS,** IDFG, USFWS	*						Ongoing operations/ administrative costs
3	1. 2. 6	Consider fish salvage, as needed	5	**Avista, MFWP**, **USFWS,** USFS	25	5	5	5	5	5	

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
3	1. 3. 7	Manage beaver to function naturally in maintaining wetlands	25	**CSKT, IDFG, MFWP, USFS**	125	5	5	5	5	5	Ongoing
3	2. 1. 1	Review fish stocking programs	25	**CSKT, IDFG, MFWP**, USFS, USFWS	*						Ongoing fish management costs
3	2. 4. 1	Assess superimposition of kokanne salmon and brown trout redds on bull trout redds	5	**IDFG, MFWP**, CSKT	50	10	10	10	10	10	
3	2. 4. 2	Evaluate northern pike and smallmouth bass in lower Flathead River	10	**CSKT**, **MFWP**, **USFWS**	*						Ongoing fishery management program cost
3	3. 2. 4	Solicit information from commercial guides	10	**IDFG, MFWP**, USFS, USFWS	*						Routine administrative planning costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
3	5. 2. 2	Evaluate habitat suitability (*i.e.*, thermal conditions) in reservoirs	15	**AVISTA, FERC, MFWP,** USFWS	***						See related task 1.4.1
3	5. 2. 4	Coordinate monitoring of fish movement	25	**AVISTA, CSKT, IDFG, MFWP**, USFWS	***						See costs associated with task 1.4.1
3	5. 2. 6	Evaluate feasibility of maintaining fluvial/resident populations	15	**AVISTA, CSKT, IDFG, MFWP**, FERC, USFWS	***						See costs associated with task 1.4.1
3	5. 2. 7	Map spawning habitat	25	**CSKT, IDFG, MFWP**	***						Costs part of tasks 1.4.1 and 5.2.3
3	5. 4. 1	Monitor fish health in private hatcheries	25	**IDFG, MFWP**, USFWS	*						Ongoing fish management costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Flathead Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
1	1. 1. 1	Reduce general sediment sources	25	**USFS**, BCMWLAP, BPA, Counties, CSKT, DOT, USEPA, FBC, GNP, MDEQ, MDNRC, MDOT, MFWP, NRCS, PCTC, USFWS	*	100	100	100	100	100	Ongoing administrative/ planning costs
1	1. 1. 2	Address forest road maintenance and hotspots	25	**USFS**, Counties, MDNRC, PCTC	***						Ongoing administrative costs; see task 6.2.7
1	1. 1. 8	Implement water quality regulations	25	**MDEQ,** Counties, USEPA, USFS, USFWS	*						Ongoing/ administrative planning costs
1	1. 2. 3	Eliminate culvert barriers	10	**USFS**, BCMWLAP, Counties, CSKT, DOT, GNP, MDOT, MDNRC, MFWP, PCTC, USFWS	100	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing
1	2. 3. 1	Discourage unauthorized fish introductions	25	**CSKT, MFWP**, BCMWLAP, GNP, MDNRC, PCTC, USFS, USFWS	*						Ongoing fish management costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Flathead Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
1	2. 5. 2	Suppress brown trout in Mill Creek	10	**MFWP, USFWS**	100	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing
1	3. 1. 1	Implement adaptive management of native fishes in Flathead Lake and Flathead River	10	**CSKT, MFWP**	2,500	100	100	100	100	100	Ongoing, new 10-year plan
1	3. 1. 2	Develop and implement Swan Lake management strategy	5	**MFWP**	50	10	10	10	10	10	
1	3. 1. 3	Aggressively protect remaining native species complexes	25	**CSKT, GNP, MFWP,** USFWS	*						Ongoing fish management plans
1	3. 3. 1	Evaluate site-specific conflicts with introduced sport fish	10	**CSKT, GNP, MFWP, USFWS**	1,000	100	100	100	10	100	Ongoing
1	4. 1. 1	Conduct genetic inventory	10	**MFWP**, BCMWLAP, CSKT, GNP, MDNRC, PCTC, USFS, USFWS	***						See related task in Chapter 1 of Recovery Plan

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Flathead Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
1	5. 1. 1	Develop standardized monitoring procedures	25	**CSKT, MFWP, USFWS**, GNP, USFS	1,250	50	50	50	50	50	Ongoing
1	5. 2. 1	Identify suitable unoccupied habitat	5	**CSKT, GNP, MFWP, USFS, USFWS**, MDNRC	***						Related to task 5.1.1
1	6. 1. 2	Protect habitat	25	**USFWS,** BCMWLAP, CSKT, GNP, MDNRC, MFWP, NRCS, PCTC, USFS	*						Ongoing
1	6. 2. 1	Monitor compliance with Kerr Dam FERC Order and Biological Opinion	35	**CSKT, FERC**, **USFWS** BIA, PPLMT,	*						Ongoing routine administrative costs
1	6. 2. 2	Minimize impacts of Bigford Dam through Federal Energy Regulatory Commission relicensing process	5	**FERC**, **PacifiC**, **USFWS**, MDEQ, MFWP	50	10	10	10	10	10	

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Flathead Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
1	6. 2. 3	Monitor compliance with Federal Columbia River Power System Biological Opinion for Hungry Horse Dam	25	**USFWS**, BPA, BOR, FERC,	*						Ongoing administrative costs
1	6. 3. 2	Encourage floodplain protection	25	**Counties**, CSKT, USEPA, FBC, MFWP, MDEQ, MDNRC, USFWS	*						Ongoing, agency management and planning costs
2	1. 1. 3	Improve maintenance along transportation corridors	25	**BNSFR, MDOT**, **USDOT**, Counties, USFS	*						Ongoing/ maintenance costs
2	1. 1. 4	Modify problem reaches of trail system	25	**GNP, USFS**	*						Ongoing/ maintenance costs
2	1. 1. 5	Monitor existing and future coal mine development in British Columbia	25	**BCMWLAP**, USEPA, FBC, MDEQ	*						Ongoing monitoring costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Flathead Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	1. 1. 7	Assess nutrient input and increase water quality monitoring and remediation	25	**MDEQ**, USEPA, FBC, FLBS	*						CWA required
2	1. 2. 1	Eliminate entrainment in diversions	25	**CSKT, MDNRC, MFWP**, GNP, NRCS, PCTC, USFS, USFWS	250	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing
2	1. 2. 2	Provide fish passage around diversions	25	**CSKT, MDNRC, MFWP,** GNP, NRCS, PCTC, USFS, USFWS	250	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing
2	1. 2. 4	Improve instream flows	25	**CSKT, MDNRC, MFWP**	250	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing
2	1. 3. 1	Conduct watershed problem assessments	10	**CSKT, MFWP, USFS**, GNP, MDNRC, NRCS, PCTC, USFWS	*						Ongoing management costs
2	1. 3. 2	Revegetate denuded riparian areas	25	**USFS**, BCMWLAP, CSKT, GNP, MDNRC, MFWP, NRCS, PCTC, USFWS	250	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Flathead Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	1. 4. 1	Reduce reservoir operational impacts	10	**BOR, BPA**, CSKT, USEPA, FBC, FERC, FLBS, GNP, MFWP, PPLMT, USFS, USFWS	200	20	20	20	20	20	Ongoing
2	1. 4. 2	Provide instream flow downstream of dams	10	**BOR, BPA**, CSKT, MFWP, USFWS	500	50	50	50	50	50	Ongoing
2	1. 4. 3	Evaluate selective withdrawal at Hungry Horse Dam	10	**BOR, MFWP**, CSKT, BPA, USFWS	***						Priority task 1.4.2
2	1. 4. 5	Evaluate impact of dam operations on bull trout predators	10	**MFWP**, BPA, BOR, CSKT	250	25	25	25	25	25	Ongoing
2	2. 1. 1	Upgrade fish hatchery practices	10	**MFWP, USFWS**, CSKT	*						Ongoing fish management costs
2	2. 1. 2	Regulate private fish ponds	25	**MFWP**	*						Ongoing fish management costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Flathead Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	2. 1. 3	Encourage development of commercial sources of westslope cutthroat trout	5	**MFWP**	*						Ongoing fish management costs
2	2. 2. 1	Optimize enforcement of laws and policies that prohibit unauthorized fish transplant and stocking	25	**CSKT, MFWP, USFWS, USFS**	*						Ongoing fish management costs
2	2. 3. 2	Develop bull trout education program	25	**CSKT, MFWP, USFWS**	250	10	10	10	10	10	Part of statewide program
2	2. 4. 1	Develop protocols for suppressing nonnative fish	10	**CSKT, MFWP, USFWS**, USFS	***						See task 2.4.1 for Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit
2	2. 4. 2	Discourage illegally introduced sport fish populations	25	**CSKT, MFWP**	*						Ongoing fish management costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Flathead Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	2. 5. 1	Experimentally remove established brook trout populations	25	**CSKT, MFWP**, GNP, MDNRC, PCTC, USFS, USFWS	625	25	25	25	25	25	
2	2. 6. 1	Reduce/minimize impacts of northern pike	25	**CSKT, MFWP**	625	25	25	25	25	25	
2	2. 6. 2	Consider installing barriers to hinder spread of nonnative fish	10	**CSKT, GNP**, **MFWP**, USFS, USFWS	250	25	25	25	25	25	Ongoing
2	3. 2. 1	Minimize unintentional bull trout mortality	25	**CSKT, MFWP**, BCMWLAP, GNP	*						Ongoing fish management costs
2	3. 2. 2	Evaluate enforcement of angling regulations and oversee scientific research	25	**CSKT, GNP, MFWP**, BCMWLAP, USFWS	***						See task 3.2.2 of Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit
2	3. 2. 3	Implement angler education efforts	25	**CSKT, GNP, MFWP**, USFWS	***						See related task 3.2.2

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Flathead Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	3. 2. 4	Solicit information from commercial guides	10	**MFWP**	*						Routine management costs
2	3. 4. 1	Evaluate opportunities for regulated bull trout fisheries	25	**CSKT, MFWP, USFWS**	*						Ongoing fish management/ regulations costs
2	5. 4. 2	Prevent spread of fish pathogens	25	**MFWP, USFWS**, CSKT, GNP	*						Ongoing fish management and health costs
2	5. 5. 1	Increase monitoring of adfluvial bull trout populations in smaller lakes	10	**CSKT, GNP, MFWP,** USFWS	1,000	100	100	100	100	100	See task 3.1.3
2	5. 6. 2	Assess hybridization threat with brook trout in the Swan River drainage	5	**MFWP**, PCTC, UM, USFS, USFWS	50	10	10	10	10	10	

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Flathead Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	6. 1. 1	Support watershed group restoration efforts	25	**CSKT, MFWP, USFS, USFWS**, BOR, BPA, Counties, DOT USEPA, FBC, FERC, FLBS, GNP, MDNRC, MDEQ, MDOT, NRCS, PCTC, PPLMT	*						Ongoing administrative costs, CWA costs
2	6. 1. 3	Support habitat protection and monitoring in British Columbia	25	**BCMWLAP, MFWP, USFWS**, BPA, USFS	*						Ongoing
2	6. 2. 4	Implement Plum Creek HCP	30	**PCTC, USFWS**	***						Ongoing; see related tasks for Upper and Lower Clark Fork Recovery Subunits
2	6. 3. 1	Fully implement State and Tribal habitat protection laws	25	**CSKT, MDNRC**, MDEQ, MFWP, PCTC, USFS	*						Ongoing/ administrative and monitoring costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Flathead Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
3	1. 1. 6	Minimize recreational development in bull trout spawning and rearing habitat	25	**Counties, CSKT, MFWP, MDNRC, NPS, USFS**, USFWS	*						Routine land management planning costs
3	1. 3. 3	Improve grazing practices	25	**USFS,** CSKT, GNP, MDNRC, MFWP, NRCS, PCTC, USFWS	*						Ongoing administrative costs
3	1. 3. 4	Restore stream channels	25	**USFS**, BCMWLAP, CSKT, GNP, MDNRC, MFWP, NRCS, PCTC, USFWS	*						Ongoing
3	1. 3. 5	Improve instream habitat	25	**USFS**, BCMWLAP, CSKT, GNP, MDNRC, MFWP, NRCS, PCTC, USFWS	*						Ongoing
3	1. 3. 6	Minimize potential stream channel degradation	25	**Counties, MDNRC**, COE, CSKT, MDEQ, MDOT, MFWP	*						Administrative costs associated with land use planning
3	1. 4. 4	Avoid gas supersaturation from Hungry Horse Dam	25	**BOR**, BPA, CSKT, USEPA, MFWP, MDEQ, USFWS	250	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Flathead Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
3	1. 5. 1	Monitor fire effects and mitigate effects where necessary	25	**CSKT, MDNRC, USFS,** GNP	*						Ongoing administrative and planning costs
3	3. 2. 5	Coordinate with British Columbia fisheries monitoring and management authorities	25	**BCMWLAP, CSKT, MFWP, USFWS**	125	5	5	5	5	5	Ongoing
3	5. 2. 2	Map spawning habitat	25	**CSKT, MFWP**, USFWS	***						See costs associated with tasks 5.1.1 and 5.5.1
3	5. 4. 1	Monitor fish health in private hatcheries	25	**MFWP**, CSKT, USFWS	*						Ongoing/ fish health costs
3	5. 5. 2	Evaluate bull trout population and habitat in Tally Lake watershed to determine potential core area status.	5	**MFWP, USFS,** USFWS	25	5	5	5	5	5	

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Flathead Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
3	5. 6. 1	Investigate status of migratory and resident life history forms of bull trout	10	**CSKT, MFWP**, BCMWLAP, CSKT, GNP, USFS, USFWS	***						See costs associated with tasks 5.1.1 and 5.5.1

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Priest Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
1	1. 1. 1	Reduce general sediment sources	25	**IDL, USFS**, County, BPA, COE, IDEQ, ITD, IDWAG, NRCS, USFWS	*						Ongoing/ administrative planning costs
1	1. 1. 2	Address forest road maintenance and hotspots	25	**IDL, USFS**, KT, USFWS, WDFW	*						Ongoing/ administrative forest planning costs
1	1. 1. 6	Implement water quality regulations	25	**IDEQ, MDEQ**, Counties, USEPA, USFS, USFWS	*						Ongoing cost; CWA required
1	1. 2. 1	Eliminate culvert barriers	25	**IDL, USFS**, County, ITD, IDFG, USFWS	625	25	25	25	25	25	Ongoing
1	1. 3. 1	Conduct watershed problem assessments	10	**IDFG, KT, WDFW,** IDL, IDEQ, NRCS, USFS, USFWS	*						Ongoing management costs
1	2. 3. 1	Discourage unauthorized fish introductions	25	**IDFG, WDFW,** USFS, USFWS	*						Ongoing fish management costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Priest Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
1	2. 4. 2	Evaluate site-specific conflicts with introduced sport fish	10	**IDFG, USFWS, WDFW**	500	50	50	50	50	50	Ongoing
1	2. 5. 2	Evaluate the potential for a barrier in the Thorofare to control the migration of nonnative fish	5	**IDFG**, USFWS	250	50	50	50	50	50	Ongoing
1	3. 1. 1	Implement adaptive management to address lake trout in Lake Pend Oreille and Priest Lake	10	**IDFG, WDFW**	250	25	25	25	25	25	
1	3. 1. 2	Aggressive protection of remaining native species complexes	25	**IDFG, WDFW**, USFWS	*						Ongoing fish management costs
1	3. 2. 2	Evaluate enforcement of angling regulations and oversee scientific research	25	**IDFG, USFWS,** WDFW	500	20	20	20	20	20	Ongoing

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Priest Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
1	3. 2. 3	Implement angler education efforts	25	**IDFG**, **WDFW**, KT, USFWS	***						Ongoing costs; part of task 3.2.2
1	5. 2. 1	Identify suitable unoccupied habitat	5	**IDFG**, **KT, USFS, USFWS, WDFW**	250	50	50	50	50	50	Ongoing
1	6. 1. 1	Support watershed group restoration efforts	25	**IDFG, KT, USFS, USFWS, WDFW**, BPA, COE, IDEQ, IDL, IDWAG, NRCS	*						Ongoing administrative costs/CWA required
1	6. 1. 2	Protect habitat	25	**IDL, USFS**, County, IDEQ, IDFG, IDWAG, KT, NRCS, USFWS, WDFW	*						Ongoing administrative costs
1	6. 1. 3	Support habitat protection and monitoring in the Priest Lake State Forest	25	**IDL**, IDFG, IDWAG, USFWS	250	10	10	10	10	10	

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Priest Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
1	6. 3. 2	Encourage floodplain protection	25	**County,** COE, USEPA, IDFG, IDEQ, IDL	*						Ongoing/ land use planning and administrative costs
2	1. 1. 3	Improve maintenance along transportation corridors	25	**ITD, USDOT,** County, IDL, USFS	*						Ongoing maintenance costs
2	1. 1. 5	Assess and reduce nutrient input from forestry practices and lakeshore development	25	**EPA, IDEQ, WADOE**, KT, USFS, USFWS,	*						Ongoing, CWA required
2	1. 2. 2	Improve instream flows	25	**IWRB**, IDL, USFS	*						Ongoing
2	1. 3. 2	Revegetate denuded riparian areas	25	**IDL, USFS**, KT, NRCS	250	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing
2	1. 3. 4	Restore stream channels	25	**IDL, USFS**, IDFG, KT, NRCS, USFWS	250	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing
2	1. 4. 1	Minimize impacts of dam operations on bull trout in Priest Lake	5	**Avista**, **IDFG, IDWR**, **COE,** USFWS	125	25	25	25	25	25	

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Priest Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	1. 4. 3	Provide upstream passage over barriers	10	**Avista, COE, IDFG**, IDL, IDWR, USFWS	1,000	100	100	100	100	100	
2	2. 2. 1	Optimize enforcement of laws and policies that prohibit unauthorized fish transplant and stocking	25	**IDFG, USFWS, USFS**	*						Ongoing fish management costs
2	2. 3. 2	Develop bull trout education program	25	**IDFG, USFWS**	*	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing
2	2. 4. 1	Develop protocols for suppressing nonnative fish	10	**IDFG, USFWS**, USFS	***						Ongoing; see task 2.4.1 of Upper Clark Fork Recovery Subunit
2	2. 5. 1	Experimentally remove established brook trout populations	25	**IDFG**, USFS, USFWS	625	25	25	25	25	25	Ongoing
2	3. 2. 1	Minimize unintentional bull trout mortality	25	**IDFG, WDFW**, USFS, USFWS,	*						Ongoing fish management costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Priest Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	3. 3. 1	Discourage illegally introduced sport fish populations	25	**IDFG, WDFW**	*						Ongoing fish management costs
2	3. 4. 1	Encourage brook trout harvest	25	**IDFG,WDFW**	*						Ongoing fish management costs
2	4. 1. 1	Conduct genetic inventory	10	**IDFG**, **KT**, USFS, USFWS, WDFW	250	25	25	25	25	25	Ongoing
2	4. 3. 1	Implement actions to develop a refugia for Priest Lakes.	5	**USFWS**, IDFG	500	100	100	100	100	100	
2	5. 1. 1	Develop standardized monitoring procedures	25	**IDFG, KT, WDFW,** USFS, USFWS	625	25	25	25	25	25	Ongoing
2	5. 1. 2	Increase monitoring of adfluvial bull trout populations in Priest lakes	25	**IDFG**, KT, USFS, USFWS	250	10	10	10	10	10	Ongoing
2	5. 2. 3	Evaluate core area classification status	5	**IDFG, USFWS**	***						See task 5.2.2

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Priest Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
2	5. 6. 2	Assess hybridization threat with brook trout in the Upper Priest River watershed	3	**IDFG**, KT, USFWS	75	25	25	25	25	25	Ongoing
2	6. 1. 4	Develop Priest Lakes partnerships	5	**IDFG**, KT, WDFW, USFWS	250	50	50	50	50	50	
2	6. 2. 1	Monitor compliance with the Biological Opinion for the Federal Columbia River Power System	25	**USFWS**, COE	*						Ongoing administrative costs
2	6. 3. 1	Fully implement State habitat protection laws	25	**IDEQ, IDL, WADNR**, IDFG, IDWAG, IDWR	*						Ongoing administrative planning costs
3	1. 1. 4	Minimize recreational development in bull trout spawning and rearing habitat	25	**County, IDL, USFS,** IDFG, USFWS, WDFW	*						Administrative costs; regulatory oversight

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Priest Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
3	1. 3. 3	Improve grazing practices	25	**IDL, USFS**, NRCS, USFWS	*						Ongoing routine planning/ administrative costs
3	1. 3. 5	Improve instream habitat	25	**IDL, USFS**, IDFG, KT, NRCS, USFWS	*						Ongoing
3	1. 3. 6	Minimize potential stream channel degradation	25	**County, IBODS,** COE, IDEQ	*						Costs part of land use planning process
3	1. 4. 2	Minimize impacts of Albeni Falls Dam on bull trout in the Priest River	5	**COE, USFWS**	250	50	50	50	50	50	
3	1. 5. 1	Monitor fire effects and mitigate effects where necessary	25	**IDL, USFS**, USFWS	*						Ongoing administrative regulatory costs

Implementation Schedule for the bull trout recovery plan: Priest Recovery Subunit											
Priority number	Task number	Task description	Task duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates ($1,000)						Comments
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	
3	2. 1. 1	Review fish stocking programs	25	**IDFG,** USFWS	*						Ongoing fish management costs
3	2. 1. 2	Regulate private fish ponds	25	**IDFG**	*						Ongoing fish management costs
3	2. 1. 3	Encourage development of commercial sources of westslope cutthroat trout	25	**IDFG**	*						Ongoing fish management costs
3	3. 2. 4	Solicit information from commercial guides	10	**IDFG**	*						Ongoing fish management costs
3	5. 1. 3	Increase lake water quality monitoring	15	**IDEQ**, USEPA	15	10	10	10	10	10	15-year program
3	5. 2. 2	Map spawning habitat	5	**IDFG**, KT, USFS, USFWS, WDFW	25	5	5	5	5	5	Ongoing
3	5. 6. 1	Investigate fluvial and resident bull trout status	10	**IDFG**, KT, USFS, USFWS, WDFW	100	10	10	10	10	10	

REFERENCES CITED

Averett, R.C., and A.N. Whitney. 1959. Western Montana fishery study: Rock Creek creel census. Job completion report, F-12-R-5-II. Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

Batt, P.E. 1996. State of Idaho bull trout conservation plan. Office of the Governor, Boise, Idaho.

Baxter, C.V., C.A. Frissell, and F. R. Hauer. 1999. Geomorphology, logging roads, and the distribution of bull trout spawning in a forested river basin: implications for management and conservation. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 128:854-867.

Berg, R.K. 1989. Lower Clark Fork River fishery investigation. Job progress report, Project F-46-R-2. Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

Bitterroot National Forest. 1991. Forest plan monitoring and evaluation report. U.S. Forest Service, Hamilton, Montana.

Bitterroot National Forest. 1992. Forest plan monitoring and evaluation report. U.S. Forest Service, Hamilton, Montana.

Bowles, E.C. , B.E. Rieman, G.R. Mauser, and D.H. Bennett. 1991. Effects of introductions of *Mysis relicta* on fisheries in northern Idaho. American Fisheries Society Symposium 9:65-74.

Brown, L.G. 1992. Draft management guide for the bull trout *Salvelinus confluentus* (Suckley) on the Wenatchee National Forest. Washington Department of Wildlife, Wenatchee.

Butler, N.M., J.A. Craft, and J.A. Stanford. 1995. A diagnostic study of nutrient loading at Swan Lake, Montana: Swan Clean Lakes Project, phase one. Open File Report 138-95. Flathead Lake Biological Station, University of Montana, Polson.

Carnefix, G., C. Frissell, and E. Reiland. 2001. Complexity and stability of bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) movement patterns in the Rock Creek drainage, Missoula and Granite counties, Montana. Expanded abstract. *In*: Proceedings, American Fisheries Society special symposium: practical approaches for conserving native inland fishes of the West. Missoula, Montana.

Carty, D., W. Fredenberg, L. Knotek, M. Deleray, and B. Hansen. 1997. Hungry Horse Dam fisheries mitigation: kokanee stocking and monitoring in Flathead Lake. Progress report—1996. DOE/BP-60559-3. Bonneville Power Administration, Portland, Oregon.

Clancy, C.G. 1991. Statewide fisheries inventory: Bitterroot Forest inventory. Job completion report. Project F-46-R-4-Ij. Montana Fish,Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

Clancy, C.G. 1993. Statewide fisheries inventory: Bitterroot Forest inventory. Job completion report. Project F-46-R-4-Ij. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

Conley, J.M. 1993. Bull trout management plan. Idaho Department of Fish and Game, Boise. April 1993.

Cross, P.D., and J.M. DosSantos. 1988. Lower Flathead system fisheries study. Executive summary. Volume I. Final Report FY 1983–1987. Prepared for Bonneville Power Administration, Portland, Oregon. Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes, Pablo, Montana.

Decker, G. 1991. Forest wide sensitive watershed analysis for the Bitterroot National Forest. U.S. Forest Service, Hamilton, Montana.

Decker, G., R. Hammer, M. Beck, and M. Mais. 1993. Bitterroot watershed evaluation process. Review draft. Bitterroot National Forest.

Deleray, M., L. Knotek, S. Rumsey, and T. Weaver. 1999. Flathead Lake and River system fisheries status report. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Kalispell.

Donald, D.B., and D.J. Alger. 1993. Geographic distribution, species displacement, and niche overlap for lake trout and bull trout in mountain lakes. Canadian Journal of Zoology 71: 238-247.

Donald, D.B., and J.D. Stelfox. 1997. Effects of fisheries management on adfluvial bull trout populations in mountain lakes of southern Alberta. *In*: W.C. Mackay, M.K. Brewin, and M. Monita, editors. Friends of the bull trout conference proceedings, Bull Trout Task Force (Alberta), c/o Trout Unlimited Canada, Calgary. p. 227-234.

DosSantos, J.M., J.E. Darling, and P.D. Cross. 1988. Lower Flathead system fisheries study. Main river and tributaries. Volume II.. Final Report FY 1983–1987. Prepared for Bonneville Power Administration, Portland, Oregon. Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes, Pablo, Montana.

Evarts, L., B. Hansen, and J. DosSantos. 1994. Flathead lake angler survey. Final Report FY 1992–1993. Monitoring activities for the Hungry Horse Fisheries Mitigation Plan. Report DOE/BP-60479-1. U.S. Department of Energy, Bonneville Power Administration, Portland, Oregon.

Evermann, B.W. 1901. Report of the Commissioner of Fish and Fisheries reflecting the establishment of fish-cultural stations in the Rocky Mountain Region and Gulf states. 52D Congress, Senate, Miscellaneous Document Number 65. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC.

Fausch, K.D. 1988. Tests of competition between native and introduced salmonids in streams: what have we learned? Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 45:2238-2246.

Flathead Basin Commission. 1999. 1997–1998 biennial report. Kalispell, Montana.

Flathead River Basin Environmental Impact Statement. 1983. Final report of the steering committee for the Flathead River basin environmental impact study. Sponsored by U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Kalispell, Montana.

Fraley, J.J., and B.B. Shepard. 1989. Life history, ecology, and subpopulation status of migratory bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) in the Flathead Lake and River system, Montana. Northwest Science 63:133-143.

Fraley, J.J., T. Weaver, and J. Vashro. 1989. Cumulative effects of human activities on bull trout in the upper Flathead drainage, Montana. Headwaters Hydrology June:111-120.

Fredenberg, W. 1997. The history of Creston National Fish Hatchery 1939–1997. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Kalispell, Montana.

Fredenberg, W. 2000. Lake trout in the Pacific northwest—"When good fish go bad." Proceedings of the 10th international aquatic nuisance species and zebra mussel conference, Toronto, Canada.

Fredericks, J. 1999. Exotic fish removal: Upper Priest and Lightning Creek drainages. Annual progress report. Idaho Department of Fish and Game, Coeur d'Alene.

Fredericks, J., and J. Venard. 2000. Bull trout exotic fish removal. 1999 annual performance report. Threatened and Endangered Species Report, Project E-20-2. Idaho Department of Fish and Game, Coeur d'Alene.

Frissell, C.A. , J. Doskocil, J.T. Gangemi, and J.A. Stanford. 1995. Identifying priority areas for protection and restoration of aquatic biodiversity: a case study in the Swan River basin, Montana, USA. Biological Station Open File Report 136-95. Flathead Lake Biological Station, University of Montana, Polson.

Gilbert, C.H., and B.W. Evermann. 1895. A report upon investigations in the Columbia River basin with descriptions of four new species of fish. *In*: McDonald. Bulletin of the U.S. Fish Commission. Volume XIV. Washington, DC.

Guth, A.R., and S.B. Cohen. 1991. Pictorial history of the U.S. Forest Service 1891–1945, Northern Region. Pictorial Histories Publishing, Missoula, Montana.

Hansen, B., and J. DosSantos. 1993a. Bull trout investigations on the Flathead Indian Reservation, Mission Reservoir. Prepared for U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Helena, Montana. Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes, Pablo, Montana.

Hansen, B., and J. DosSantos. 1993b. Bull trout investigations on the Flathead Indian Reservation, St. Mary's Lake. Prepared for U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Helena, Montana. Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes, Pablo, Montana.

Hauer, F. R., and C.O. Blum. 1991. The effect of timber management on stream water quality. Flathead Basin forest practices water quality and fisheries cooperative program, Flathead Basin Commission, Kalispell, Montana.

Hoelscher, B., J. DuPont, C. Robertson, J. Hinson, D. McGreer, and D. Schult. 2001. Idaho's 2000 forest practices water quality audit. Final report. Idaho Department of Environmental Quality, Boise.

Huston, J.E. 1985. Thirty-two years of fish management—Noxon Rapids and Cabinet Gorge Reservoirs. Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

Huston, J.E. 1988. Northwest Montana coldwater lakes investigations: Noxon Rapids and Cabinet Gorge Reservoirs segment. Statewide Fisheries Investigations, Project No. F-46-R-1-II-a. Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

(IDFG) Idaho Department of Fish and Game. 2001. Fisheries management plan 2001–2006. Idaho Department of Fish and Game, Boise.

Ingman, G.L. 1992a. A rationale and alternatives for controlling nutrients and eutrophication problems in the Clark Fork River basin. Section 525 of the 1987 Clean Water Act amendments. Montana Department of Health and Environmental Sciences, Helena.

Ingman, G.L. 1992b. Assessment of phosphorus and nitrogen sources in the Clark Fork River basin 1988–1991. Final Report Section 525 of the 1987 Clean Water Act amendments. Montana Department of Health and Environmental Sciences, Helena.

Ingman, G.L., M.A. Kerr, D.L. McGuire. 1990. Water quality investigations in the Blackfoot River drainage, Montana. A report to the Big Blackfoot River and Oakbrook, Illinois, chapters of Trout Unlimited. Montana Department of Health and Environmental Sciences, Water Quality Bureau, Helena.

Javorsky, L. 1994. The Bitterroot River floodplain: an historic analysis. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Hamilton.

Kanda, N., R.F. Leary, and F.W. Allendorf. 1994. Population genetic structure of bull trout in the upper Flathead River drainage. University of Montana, Missoula.

Kitano, S., K. Maekawa, S. Nakano, and K.D. Fausch. 1994. Spawning behavior of bull trout in the upper Flathead drainage, Montana, with special reference to hybridization with brook trout. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 123:988-992.

Knotek, W.L., M. Deleray, and B. Marotz. 1997. Hungry Horse Dam Fisheries Mitigation Program—fish passage and habitat improvement in the upper Flathead River basin. BPA Publication DOE/BP-60559-4. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Kalispell; Bonneville Power Administration, Portland, Oregon.

Knudson, K. 1992. Potential effects of nutrient control measures in the Clark Fork basin on resident fisheries. Report prepared for Montana Department of Health and Environmental Sciences, Helena.

Kramer, R.P., and three others. 1991. Fisheries habitat and aquatic environment monitoring report 1989 and 1990. Lolo and Deerlodge National Forests, Missoula, Montana.

Kramer, R. P., B. W. Riggers, and K.R. Furrow. 1994. Fisheries habitat and aquatic environment monitoring report 1993. Lolo and Deerlodge National Forests, Missoula, Montana.

Leary, R.F., and F.W. Allendorf. 2000. The most likely source of brown trout in Mill Creek, Montana is Plymouth Rock brown trout. Wild Trout and Salmon Genetics Laboratory Report 00/1. University of Montana, Missoula.

Leary, R.F., F.W. Allendorf, and K.L. Knudsen. 1983. Consistently high meristic counts in natural hybrids between brook trout and bull trout. Systematic Zoology. 32:369-376.

Leathe, S.A., and M.D. Enk. 1985. Cumulative effects of micro-hydro development on the fisheries of the Swan River drainage, Montana. I. Summary report. Prepared for the Bonneville Power Administration, Portland, Oregon. Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife, and Parks, Kalispell, and the Flathead National Forest, Bigfork, Montana.

Leathe, S.A., and P.J. Graham. 1982. Flathead Lake fish food habits study. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Final Report R008224-0104. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

Long, M.H. 1997. Sociological implications of bull trout management in northwest Montana: illegal harvest and game warden efforts to deter. *In*: W.C. Mackay, M.K. Brewin, and M. Monita, editors. Friends of the bull trout conference proceedings, Bull Trout Task Force (Alberta), c/o Trout Unlimited Canada, Calgary. p. 71-74.

(LPOWAG) Lake Pend Oreille Watershed Advisory Group. 1999. Lake Pend Oreille bull trout conservation plan. Prepared for State of Idaho, Boise. Resource Planning Unlimited.

Maxell, B.A. 1999. A power analysis on the monitoring of bull trout stocks using redd counts. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 19:860-866.

(MBTRT) Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team. 1998. Draft restoration plan for bull trout in the Clark Fork River basin and Kootenai River basin, Montana. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

(MBTRT) Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team. 2000. Restoration plan for bull trout in the Clark Fork River basin and Kootenai River basin, Montana. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

(MBTSG) Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group. 1995a. Bitterroot River drainage bull trout status report. Prepared for Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team, Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

(MBTSG) Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group. 1995b. Blackfoot River drainage bull trout status report. Prepared for Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team, Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

(MBTSG) Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group. 1995c. Flathead River drainage bull trout status report (including Flathead Lake, the North and Middle Forks of the Flathead River, and the Stillwater and Whitefish Rivers). Prepared for the Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team, Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

(MBTSG) Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group. 1995d. South Fork Flathead River drainage bull trout status report (upstream of Hungry Horse Dam). Prepared for Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team, Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

(MBTSG) Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group. 1995e. Upper Clark Fork River drainage bull trout status report (including Rock Creek). Prepared for Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team, Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

(MBTSG) Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group. 1996a. Lower Clark Fork River drainage bull trout status report (Cabinet Gorge Dam to Thompson Falls). Prepared for Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team, Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

(MBTSG) Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group. 1996b. Swan River drainage bull trout status report (including Swan Lake). Prepared for Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team, Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

(MBTSG) Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group. 1996c. Assessment of methods for removal or suppression of introduced fish to aid in bull trout recovery. Prepared for Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team, Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

(MBTSG) Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group. 1996d. The role of stocking in bull trout recovery. Prepared for Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

(MBTSG) Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group. 1996e. Middle Clark Fork River drainage bull trout status report (from Thompson Falls to Milltown, including the lower Flathead River to Kerr Dam). Prepared for Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team, Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

(MBTSG) Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group. 1998. The relationship between land management activities and habitat requirements of bull trout. Prepared for Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team, Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

McGuire, D.L. 1991. Aquatic macroinvertebrate survey of the Blackfoot River, Montana: August 1988 and 1989. Prepared for Montana Department of Health and Environmental Sciences Water Quality Bureau, Helena.

McIntyre, J.D. 1998. An assessment of bull trout and lake trout interactions in Flathead Lake, Montana. Prepared for Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

(MDEQ) Montana Department of Environmental Quality. 2000. Draft Montana 303 (d) list. A compilation of impaired and threatened waters in need of restoration. Montana Department of Environmental Quality, Planning, Prevention and Assistance Division, Resource Protection Planning Bureau, Helena.

(MDHES) Montana Department of Health and Environmental Sciences. 1994. Montana water quality 1994. The Montana 305(b) Report. Water Quality Division, Helena.

(MDNRC) Montana Department of Natural Resources and Conservation. 1984. River mile index of the Columbia River basin. Water Resources Division of MDNRC, Helena.

(MDOJ) Montana Department of Justice, Natural Resources Damage Program. 1999. Draft Upper Clark Fork River basin restoration plan procedures and criteria. State of Montana, Helena.

(MDSL) Montana Department of State Lands. 1994. Montana guide to the streamside management zone law and rules. Missoula, Montana.

(MFWP) Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks. 1989. Rock Creek fisheries management plan, September 1989–September 1994. MFWP, Region 2, Missoula.

(MFWP) Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks. 1991. Dewatered streams list (revised). MFWP, Helena.

(MFWP) Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks. 1992. Montana statewide angling pressure 1991. MFWP, Helena.

(MFWP) Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks. 1994. Montana statewide angling pressure 1993. MFWP, Helena.

(MFWP) Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks. 1997a. Fisheries losses attributable to reservoir drawdown in excess of limits stated in the Columbia Basin fish and wildlife program: Hungry Horse and Libby Dams. Draft report. MFWP, Kalispell.

(MFWP) Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks. 1997b. South Fork Flathead River conservation agreement. MFWP, Helena.

(MFWP) Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks. 2000a. Montana statewide angling pressure 1999. MFWP, Helena.

(MFWP) Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks. 2000b. Draft environmental assessment for bull trout fishery reestablishment in Hungry Horse Reservoir and South Fork Flathead River drainage. MFWP, Kalispell.

(MFWP/CSKT) Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks/Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes. 2000. Flathead Lake and River Fisheries Co.—management plan. MFWP, Kalispell.

Moore, J.N. , S.N. Luoma, and D. Peters. 1991. Downstream effects of mine effluent on an intermontane riparian system. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 48:222-232.

Moyle, P.B. 1976. Fish introductions in California: history and impacts on native fishes. Biological Conservation 9:101-118.

Muhlfeld, C.C., S. Glutting, R. Hunt, and B. Marotz. 2000. Seasonal distribution and movements of native and non-native fishes in the upper Flathead River, Montana. Flathead River native species project, summary report 1997–1999. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Kalispell.

Nelson, J.S. 1965. Effects of fish introductions and hydroelectric development on fishes in the Kananaskis River system, Alberta. Journal Fisheries Research Board Canada 22:721-753.

Nelson, M.L. 1999. Evaluation of the potential for "resident"bull trout to reestablish the migratory life-form. M.Sc. thesis. Montana State University, Bozeman.

Neraas, L.P., and P. Spruell. 2000. Genetic analysis of bull trout from the lower Clark Fork basin and Cabinet Gorge Dam. Report WTSGL00-101. Wild Trout and Salmon Genetics Laboratory, Division of Biological Sciences, University of Montana, Missoula.

Nesler, T.P., and E.P. Bergersen, editors. 1991. Mysids in fisheries: hard lessons from headlong introductions. American Fisheries Society symposium 9. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

(PBTTAT) Panhandle Bull Trout Technical Advisory Team. 1998a. Lake Pend Oreille key watershed bull trout problem assessment. Prepared for the State of Idaho, Boise.

(PBTTAT) Panhandle Bull Trout Technical Advisory Team. 1998b. Priest River Basin bull trout problem assessment. Prepared for the State of Idaho, Boise.

Periman, R.A. 1985. Milltown project rehabilitation. *In*: C.E. Carlson and L.L. Bahls, editors. Proceedings of the Clark Fork River symposium. Montana Academy of Sciences, Montana College of Mineral Science and Technology, Butte.

Periman, R.D. 1994. Historic preservation and management plan for historic mining and associated properties. Draft. Deerlodge National Forest, Butte, Montana.

Peters, D., and R. Spoon. 1989. Preliminary fisheries inventory of the Big Blackfoot River. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks.

Phillips, G., and J. Lipton. 1995. Injury to aquatic resources caused by metals in Montana's Clark Fork River basin: historic perspective and overview. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 52:1990-1993.

Pierce, R., and C. Podner. 2000. Blackfoot River fisheries inventory, monitoring and restoration report. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Missoula.

Pierce, R., and D. Peters. 1990. Aquatic studies in the middle Blackfoot River, Nevada Creek, and Nevada Spring Creek corridors. Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Missoula.

Pierce, R., C. Podner, and J. McFee. 2002. Blackfot River fisheries inventory, restoration and monitoring progress report for 2001. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Missoula.

Pratt, K.L., and J.E. Huston. 1993. Status of bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) in Lake Pend Oreille and the lower Clark Fork River. Draft. Prepared for Avista Corporation, Spokane, Washington.

Rieman, B.E., and D.L. Myers. 1997. Use of redd counts to detect trends in bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) populations. Conservation Biology 11(4):1015-1018.

Rieman, B.E., and F.W. Allendorf. 2001. Effective population size and genetic conservation criteria for bull trout. *In Press.* North American Journal of Fisheries Management.

Rieman, B.E., and J.D. McIntyre. 1993. Demographic and habitat requirements for conservation of bull trout. General Technical Report INT-302. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Intermountain Research Station, Ogden, Utah.

Rieman, B.E., and J.D. McIntyre. 1995. Occurrence of bull trout in naturally fragmented habitat patches of varied size. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 124(3):285-296.

Rieman, B.E., and J.D. McIntyre. 1996. Spatial and temporal variability in bull trout redd counts. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 16:132-146.

Rieman, B.E., and J.L. Clayton. 1997. Wildfire and native fish: issues of forest health and conservation of native fishes. Fisheries 22(11):6-15.

Rieman, B.E., D. Lee, G. Chandler, and D. Myers. 1997. Does wildfire threaten extinction for salmonids: responses of redband trout and bull trout following recent large fires on the Boise National Forest. *In*: J. Greenlee, editor. Proceedings of the symposium on fire effects on threatened and endangered and habitats. International Association of Wildland Fire, Fairfield, Washington. p. 47-57.

Rothrock, G. 2000. Draft Priest River subbasin assessment and total maximum daily load. Idaho Department of Environmental Quality, Boise.

Rothrock, G.C., and D.T. Mosier. 1997. Phase 1 diagnostic analysis, Priest Lake, Idaho. Department of Health and Welfare, Division of Environmental Quality, Coeur d'Alene.

Rumsey, S. 1988. Mysis monitoring in seven Western Montana lakes. Supplement to Federal Aid to Fish and Wildlife Restoration Job Performance Progress Report F-7-R-37, Job I-a. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Kalispell.

Rumsey, S., and T. Werner. 1997. Swan Lake, Montana, angler creel survey—1995. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

Schmetterling, D.A., and M. Bohneman. 2000. 1999 Blackfoot River creel survey. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Missoula.

Schmetterling, D.A., and M.H. Long. 1999. Montana anglers' inability to identify bull trout and other salmonids. Fisheries 24(7):24-27.

Sedell, J.R., F.N. Leone, and W.S. Duval. 1991. Water transportation and storage of logs. *In*: W.R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. American Fisheries Society Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Smith, R.W. 1993. Tributary survey, lower Clark Fork River drainage, Montana. Final report: preliminary study section I. Washington Water Power Company, Spokane, Washington.

Smith, R.W. 1994. Tributary survey lower Clark Fork River drainage: progress report—Rock Creek and West Fork Rock Creek. Washington Water Power Company, Spokane, Washington.

Spalding, S. 1997. Montana bull trout redd survey manual. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

Spence, L.E. 1997. Effects of the June, 1975, Mike Horse Mine tailings dam failure on the water quality and aquatic resources of the upper Blackfoot River, Montana. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena.

Spencer, C. 1991a. Comparative limnology of Swan Lake and Flathead Lake, northwestern Montana. Open File Report 126-91. Flathead Lake Biological Station, University of Montana, Polson.

Spencer, C. 1991b. Flathead Basin forest practices, water quality, and fisheries cooperative program: evaluation of historical sediment deposition related to land use through analysis of lake sediments. Flathead Basin Commission, Kalispell, Montana.

Spencer, C., R. McClelland, and J. Stanford. 1991. Shrimp introduction, salmon collapse, and bald eagle displacement: cascading interactions in the food web of a large aquatic ecosystem. Bioscience 41(1):14-21.

Spoon, R.L. 1987. Evaluation of management of water releases for Painted Rocks Reservoir, Bitterroot River, Montana. Contract No. DE-A179-83BP13076. Prepared for Bonneville Power Administration, Portland, Oregon. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks.

Spruell, P., and F.W. Allendorf. 1998. Genetic and demographic analysis of potential source-sink population structure of bull trout in the Lake Pend Oreille basin. Progress report. Wild Trout and Salmon Genetics Lab, University of Montana, Missoula.

Spruell, P., A.R. Hemmingsen, P.J. Howell, N. Kanda, and F.W. Allendorf. 2002. Conservation genetics of bull trout: geographic distribution of variation at microsatellite loci. Conservation Genetics. In Press.

State of Montana and Rocky Mountain Consultants. 1995. Restoration determination plan for the upper Clark Fork River basin. Natural Resource Damage Litigation Program, Montana Department of Justice, Helena.

Swanberg, T.R. 1997. Movements of and habitat use by fluvial bull trout in the Blackfoot River, Montana. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 126:735-746.

Trombulak, S.C., and C.A. Frissell. 2000. Review of ecological effects of roads on terrestrial and aquatic communities. Conservation Biology 14:18-30.

(USDA) U.S. Department of Agriculture. 1993. Grouse Creek environmental assessment. Idaho Panhandle National Forest, Sandpoint.

(USDA) U.S. Department of Agriculture. 1995. Trestle Creek watershed improvement environmental assessment. Idaho Panhandle National Forest, Sandpoint.

(USDA) U.S. Department of Agriculture. 1997. Gold Creek watershed analysis. Idaho Panhandle National Forest, Sandpoint.

(USEPA) U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 1993. Clark Fork–Pend Oreille basin water quality study—a summary of findings and a management plan. Regions VIII and X and the States of Montana, Idaho, and Washington. USEPA 910/R-93-006. USEPA, Seattle, WA.

(USFWS) U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1998. Klamath River and Columbia River bull trout population segments: status summary. Prepared by the USFWS bull trout listing team, Boise, Idaho.

(USFWS) U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2000. Biological opinion. Effects to listed species from operations of the Federal Columbia River Power System. USFWS Regions 1 and 6, Portland, Oregon, and Denver, Colorado.

(USFWS) U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, National Marine Fisheries Service, Plum Creek Timber Company, and CH2M HILL. 2000. Final environmental impact statement and native fish habitat conservation plan—proposed permit for taking of federally protected native fish species on Plum Creek Timber Company lands. 3 volumes. USFWS, Boise, Idaho.

(USGS) U.S. Geological Survey. 1993. Water resources data, Montana data report. MT-93-1. Helena, Montana.

(USGS) U.S. Geological Survey. 2001. Water resources data, Montana, water year 2000. Water Data Report MT-00-1. Helena, Montana.

Vidergar, D.T. 2000. Population estimates, food habits and estimates of consumption of selected predatory fishes in Lake Pend Oreille, Idaho. M.S. thesis. University of Idaho, Moscow.

Washington Water Power Company. 1998. Clark Fork River native salmonid restoration plan. Clark Fork relicensing team fisheries working group. Prepared by Kleinschmidt Associates and K.L. Pratt, consultants. Avista Corporation, Spokane, Washington.

Watson, G., and T.W. Hillman. 1997. Factors affecting the distribution and abundance of bull trout: an investigation at hierarchical scales. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 17(2):237-252.

Watson, V.J. 1985. A synthesis of water quality problems in the Clark Fork River basin. *In*: C.E. Carlson and L.L. Bahls, editors. Proceedings of the Clark Fork River symposium. Montana Academy of Sciences, Montana College of Mineral Science and Technology, Butte.

Watson, V. 1991. Evaluation of the benefits of nutrient reductions on algal levels in the Clark Fork River. Final report. Montana Department of Health and Environmental Sciences, Helena.

Weaver, T. 1993. Coal Creek fisheries monitoring study number XI and forest-wide fisheries monitoring—1992. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Kalispell, Montana. Sponsored by U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Flathead National Forest, Kalispell, Montana.

Weaver, T.M., and J.J. Fraley. 1993. A method to measure emergence success of westslope cutthroat trout fry from varying substrate compositions in a natural stream channel. North American Journal Fisheries Management 13:817-822.

Woods, P.F. 1991. Limnology of the pelagic zone, Pend Oreille Lake, Idaho 1989–90. U.S. Geological Survey, Boise, Idaho.

Zaroban, D.F. , B. Love, J. Colla, G. Lesch, J. Heimer, J. Lehner, B. Lukens, S. Poirier, B. Lee, and K. David. 1997. Forest practices water quality audit. 1996. Idaho Department of Health and Welfare, Division of Environmental Quality, Boise. (See Hoelscher *et al.* 2001).

Zollweg, E. 1998. Piscine predation on bull trout in the Flathead River, Montana. M.Sc. thesis. Montana State University, Bozeman.

Zubik, R.J., and J.J. Fraley. 1987. Determination of fishery losses in the Flathead system resulting from the construction of Hungry Horse Dam. Prepared for Bonneville Power Administration, Portland, Oregon. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Kalispell.

In Litt. **References**

Corsi, C., Idaho Department of Fish and Game. 2001. Project proposal submitted to Bonneville Power Administration (BPA) under the FY2002 Mountain Columbia Province solicitation, Project 24004: Pend Oreille/Priest exotic fish species suppression and native fish protection. BPA, Portland Oregon.

Fredenberg, W. 1999. Memo documenting recovery of carcasses of two dead lake trout from Swan Lake. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Kalispell. Montana. December 24, 1999.

Graham, P., and B. Clinch. l997. Comments on the 1997 proposed rule for bull trout. State of Montana, Helena.

(IDFG) Idaho Department of Fish and Game. 2000. Press release documenting regulation change designed to increase harvest of Kamloops. IDFG, Coeur d'Alene.

Inter Lake. 1900. Compilation of excerpts from Inter Lake newspaper articles describing habitat impacts and condition of the fishery during the period 1896–1906. Kalispell, Montana.

Inter Lake. 2001. Census 2000. Kalispell, Montana. March 22, 2001.

Leary, R., University of Montana, Division of Biological Sciences, Missoula. 1991. Letter to Chris Clancy, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks. December 10, 1991.

Leary, R., University of Montana, Division of Biological Sciences, Missoula. 1993. Letter to Chris Clancy, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks. September 15, 1993.

(MFWP).Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena. 2000. Montana fishing regulations 2000–2001.

Missoulian. 2000. News article by Sherry Devlin. Add pike to the mix. Missoula, Montana. May 1, 2000.

Muhlfeld, C. 2001. Memorandum to Brian Marotz and Jim Vashro, Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Kalispell. July 6, 2001.

Racicot, M. 1998. Letter to Jamie Rappaport Clark from Marc Racicot, Governor of Montana, August 21, 1998. Helena, Montana.

Vashro, J. 2000. Database on Montana unauthorized fish introduction. Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Kalispell. February 2000.

Personal Communications

L. Evarts, Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes. 2000. Private conversation with Wade Fredenberg, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, about Flathead River and Lake management strategies. July 2000.

APPENDIX A: Common and Scientific Names of Fishes Found in the Clark Fork Recovery Unit.

northern pike, *Esox lucius*	Introduced
largescale sucker, *Catostomus macrocheilus*	Native
longnose sucker, *C. catostomus*	Native
northern pikeminnow, *Ptychocheilus oregonensis*	Native
peamouth, *Mylocheilus caurinus*	Native
redside shiner, *Richardsonius baltteatus*	Native
longnose dace, *Rhinichthys cataractae*	Native
fathead minnow, *Pimephales promelas*	Introduced
central mudminnow, *Umbra limi*	Introduced
Chinook salmon, *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*	Introduced
kokanee salmon, *O. nerka*	Introduced
rainbow, redband, or steelhead trout, *O. mykiss*	Introduced
westslope cutthroat trout, *O. clarki lewisi*	Native
Yellowstone cutthroat trout, *O. clarki bouvieri*	Introduced
golden trout, *O. aquabonita*	Introduced
brown trout, *Salmo trutta*	Introduced
brook trout, *Salvelinus fontinalis*	Introduced
bull trout, *S. confluentus*	Native
lake trout, *S. namaycush*	Introduced
Arctic grayling, *Thymallus arcticus*	Introduced
mountain whitefish, *Prosopium williamsoni*	Native
pygmy whitefish, *P. coulteri*	Native
lake whitefish, *Coregonus clupeaformis*	Introduced
black bullhead, *Ameiurus melas*	Introduced
yellow bullhead, *A. natalis*	Introduced
burbot, *Lota lota*	Introduced
brook stickleback, *Culaea inconstans*	Introduced
black crappie, *Pomoxis nigromaculatus*	Introduced
pumpkinseed, *Lepomis gibbosus*	Introduced
bluegill, *L. macrochirus*	Introduced

smallmouth bass, *Micropterus dolomieu* . . . . . Introduced
largemouth bass, *M. salmoides* . . . . . Introduced
shorthead sculpin, *Cottus confusus* . . . . . Native
slimy sculpin, *C. cognatus* . . . . . Native
yellow perch, *Perca flavescens* . . . . . Introduced
walleye, *Stizostedion vitreum* . . . . . Introduced

APPENDIX B: List of Chapters.

Chapter 1	Introductory
Chapter 2	Klamath River Recovery Unit, Oregon
Chapter 3	**Clark Fork River Recovery Unit, Montana and Idaho**
Chapter 4	Kootenai River Recovery Unit, Montana and Idaho
Chapter 5	Willamette River Recovery Unit, Oregon
Chapter 6	Hood River Recovery Unit, Oregon
Chapter 7	Deschutes River Recovery Unit, Oregon
Chapter 8	Odell Lake Recovery Unit, Oregon
Chapter 9	John Day River Recovery Unit, Oregon
Chapter 10	Umatilla–Walla Walla Rivers Recovery Unit, Oregon and Washington
Chapter 11	Grande Ronde River Recovery Unit, Oregon
Chapter 12	Imnaha–Snake Rivers Recovery Unit, Oregon
Chapter 13	Hells Canyon Complex Recovery Unit, Oregon and Idaho
Chapter 14	Malheur River Recovery Unit, Oregon
Chapter 15	Coeur d'Alene Lake Basin Recovery Unit, Idaho
Chapter 16	Clearwater River Recovery Unit, Idaho
Chapter 17	Salmon River Recovery Unit, Idaho
Chapter 18	Southwest Idaho Recovery Unit, Idaho
Chapter 19	Little Lost River Recovery Unit, Idaho
Chapter 20	Lower Columbia River Recovery Unit, Washington
Chapter 21	Middle Columbia River Recovery Unit, Washington
Chapter 22	Upper Columbia River Recovery Unit, Washington
Chapter 23	Northeast Washington Recovery Unit, Washington
Chapter 24	Snake River Washington Recovery Unit, Washington
Chapter 25	St. Mary–Belly Rivers Recovery Unit, Montana